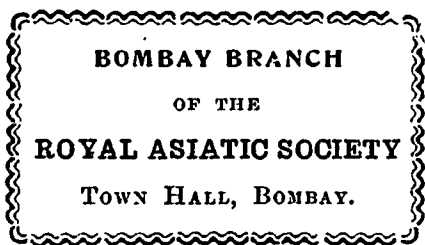




00052624

NOT TO BE ISSUED  
OUT OF THE LIBRARY.







THE CANTERBURY TALES OF CHAUCER;  
WITH AN ESSAY ON HIS LANGUAGE AND  
VERSIFICATION, AN INTRODUCTORY  
DISCOURSE, NOTES, AND A  
GLOSSARY BY THO.

TYRWHITT,  
ESQ.

52624

*ae*



VOL. II.



LONDON:  
WILLIAM PICKERING.  
1830.

IX-0-4

821.1  
cha/can  
52624



00052624

C. WHITTINGHAM, TOOKS COURT,  
CHANCERY LANE.

4237

CONTENTS  
OF THE SECOND VOLUME.

---

	Page
THE Milleres Prologue.....	1
The Milleres Tale .....	4
The Reves Prologue.....	30
The Reves Tale .....	32
The Cokes Prologue .....	48
The Cokes Tale .....	50
The Man of Lawes Prologue .....	52
The Man of Lawes Tale .....	56
The Wif of Bathes Prologue .....	103
The Wif of Bathes Tale.....	136
The Freres Prologue .....	152
The Freres Tale .....	153
The Sompnoures Prologue .....	167
The Sompnoures Tale .....	169
The Clerkes Prologue .....	192
The Clerkes Tale .....	194
The Marchantes Prologue .....	244
The Marchantes Tale.....	246
The Squieres Prologue.....	291
The Squieres Tale .....	292
The Frankeleines Prologue .....	318
The Frankeleines Tale .....	320

---





THE  
CANTERBURY TALES.

---

THE MILLERES PROLOGUE.

WHAN that the Knight had thus his tale told, 311  
In all the compaignie n'as ther yong ne old,  
That he ne said it was a noble storie,  
And worthy to be drawn to memorie;  
And namely the gentiles everich on.  
Our Hoste lough and swore, So mote I gon,  
This goth aright; unboked is the male;  
Let see now who shal tell another tale:  
For trewely this game is wel begonne.  
Now telleth ye, sire Monk, if that ye conne, 3120  
Somwhat, to quiten with the knightes tale.

The Miller that for-dronken was all pale,  
So that unethes upon his hors he sat,  
He n'old avalen neither hood ne hat,  
Ne abiden no man for his curtesie,  
But in Pilates vois he gan to crie,  
And swore by armes, and by blood, and bones,  
I can a noble tale for the nones,  
With which I wol now quite the knightes tale. 3129

Our Hoste saw that he was dronken of ale, 3130  
 And sayd; abide, Robin, my leve brother,  
 Som better man shall tell us first another:  
 Abide, and let us werken thriftily.

By Goddes soule (quod he) that wol not I,  
 For I wol speke, or elles go my way.

Our Hoste answerd; Tell on a devil way;  
 Thou art a fool; thy wit is overcome.

Now herkeneth, quod the Miller, all and some:  
 But first I make a protestatioun, 3139  
 That I am dronke, I know it by my soun:  
 And therefore if that I misspeke or say,  
 Wite it the ale of Southwerk, I you pray:  
 For I wol tell a legend and a lif  
 Both of a carpenter and of his wif,  
 How that a clerk hath set the wrightes cappe.

The Reve answerd and saide, Stint thy clappe.  
 Let be thy lewed dronken harlotrie. 3147  
 It is a sinne, and eke a gret folie  
 To apeiren any man, or him defame,  
 And eke to bringen wives in swiche a name.  
 Thou mayst ynough of other things sain.

This dronken Miller spake ful sone again,  
 And sayde; Leve brother Osewold,  
 Who hath no wif, he is no cokewold.  
 But I say not therfore that thou art on; 3155

THE MILLERES PROLOGUE.

Ther ben ful goode wives many on. 3156  
 Why art thou angry with my tale now ?  
 I have a wif parde as wel as thou,  
 Yet n'olde I, for the oxen in my plough,  
 Taken upon me more than ynough  
 As demen of myself that I am on ;  
 I wol beleven wel that I am non.  
 An husbond shuld not ben inquisitif  
 Of Goddes privity, ne of his wif. 3164  
 So he may finden Goddes foison there,  
 Of the remenant nedeth not to enquire.

What shuld I more say, but this Millere  
 He n'olde his wordes for no man forbere,  
 But told his cherles tale in his manere,  
 Me thinketh, that I shal reherse it here.  
 And therefore every gentil wight I pray,  
 For Goddes love as deme not that I say 3172  
 Of evil entent, but that I mote reherse  
 Hir tales alle, al be they better or werse,  
 Or elles falsen som of my matere.  
 And therefore who so list it not to here,  
 Turne over the leef, and chese another tale,  
 For he shal find ynow bothe gret and smale,  
 Of storial thing that toucheth gentillesse,  
 And eke moralite, and holinesse. 3180

THE MILLERES TALE.

Blameth not me, if that ye chese amis. 3181  
The Miller is a cherl, ye know wel this,  
So was the Reve, (and many other mo)  
And harlotrie they tolden bothe two.  
Aviseth you now, and put me out of blame ;  
And eke men shuld not make earnest of game.

THE MILLERES TALE.

WHILOM ther was dwelling in Oxenforde 3187  
A riche gnof, that gestes helde to borde,  
And of his craft he was a carpenter.  
With him ther was dwelling a poure scoler,  
Had lerned art, but all his fantasie  
Was turned for to lerne astrologie,  
And coude a certain of conclusions  
To demen by interrogations,  
If that men asked him in certain houres, 3195  
Whan that men shulde have drought or elles shoures :  
Or if men asked him what shulde falle  
Of every thing, I may not reken alle.  
This clerk was cleped hendy Nicholas ;  
Of derne love he coude and of solas ;  
And therto he was slie and ful prive,  
And like a maiden meke for to se.  
A chambre had he in that hostelrie 320

Alone, withouten any compaignie,  
 Ful fetisly ydight with herbes sote,  
 And he himself was swete as is the rote  
 Of licoriis, or any setewale.  
 His almageste, and bokes gret and smale,  
 His astrelabre, longing for his art,  
 His augrim stones, layen faire apart  
 On shelves couched at his beddes hed,  
 His presse ycovered with a falding red. 3212  
 And all above ther lay a gay sautrie,  
 On which he made on nightes melodie,  
 So swetely, that all the chambre rong :  
 And *Angelus ad virginem* he song.  
 And after that he song the kinges note ;  
 Ful often blessed was his mery throte.  
 And thus this swete clerk his time spent  
 After his frendes finding and his rent. 3220

This carpenter had wedded new a wif,  
 Which that he loved more than his lif :  
 Of eightene yere she was I gesse of age.  
 Jalous he was, and held hire narwe in cage,  
 For she was wild and yonge, and he was old,  
 And demed himself belike a cokewold.  
 He knew not Caton, for his wit'was rude,  
 That bade a man shulde wedde his similitude.  
 Men shulden wedden after hir estate, 3229

For youthe and elde is often at debate. 3230.

But sithen he was fallen in the snare,  
He most endure (as other folk) his care.

Fayre was this yonge wif, and therwithal  
As any wesel hire body gent and smal.

A seint she wered, barred all of silk,

A barme-cloth eke as white as morwe milk

Upon hire lendes, ful of many a gore.

White was hire smok, and brouded all before 3238

And eke behind on hire colere aboute

Of cole-black silk, within and eke withoute.

The tapes of hire white volupere

Were of the same suit of hire colere ;

Hire fillet brode of silk, and set full hye :

And sikerly she had a likerous eye.

Ful smal y pulled were hire browes two,

And they were bent, and black as any slo. 3246

She was wel more blisful on to see

Than is the newe perjenete tree ;

And softer than the wolle is of a wether.

And by hire girdel heng a purse of lether,

Tasseled with silk, and perled with latoun.

In all this world to seken up and doun

Ther n'is no man so wise, that coude thenche

So gay a popelot, or swiche a wenche.

Ful brighter was the shining of hire hewe, 3255

Than in the tour the noble yforged newe. 3256  
 But of hire song, it was as loud and yerne,  
 As any swallow sitting on a berne.

Therto she coude skip, and make a game,  
 As any kid or calf folowing his dame.  
 Hire mouth was swete as braket or the meth,  
 Or hord of apples, laid in hay or heth.

Winising she was, as is a joly colt,  
 Long as a mast, and upright as a bolt. 3264

A broche she bare upon hire low colere,  
 As brode as is the bosse of a bokelere.  
 Hire shoon were laced on hire legges hie ;  
 She was a primerole, a piggesnie,  
 For any lord to liggen in his bedde,  
 Or yet for any good yeman to wedde.

Now sire, and eft sire, so befell the cas,  
 That on a day this hendy Nicholas 3272  
 Fel with this yonge wif to rage and pleye,  
 While that hire husbond was at Oseney,  
 As clerkes ben ful subtil and ful queint.  
 And prively he caught hire by the queint,  
 And sayde ; Ywis, but if I have my will,  
 For derne love of thee, lemman, I spill.  
 And helde hire faste by the hanche bones,  
 And sayde ; Lemman, love me wel at ones,  
 Or I wol dien, al so God me save. 3281

And she sprong as a colt doth in the trave: 3282  
 And with hire hed she writhed faste away,  
 And sayde; I wol not kisse thee by my fay.  
 Why let be, (quod she) let be, Nicholas,  
 Or I wol crie out harow and alas.  
 Do way your hondes for your curtesie.

This Nicholas gan mercy for to crie,  
 And spakè so faire, and profered him so fast,  
 That she hire love him granted at the last, 3290  
 And swore hire oth by Seint Thomas of Kent,  
 That she wold ben at his commandement,  
 Whan that she may hire leiser wel espie.  
 Myn husband is so ful of jalousie,  
 That but ye waiten wel, and be prive,  
 I wot right wel I n'am but ded, quod she.  
 Ye mosten be ful derne as in this cas.

Nay, therof care you not, quod Nicholas: 3298  
 A clerk had litherly beset his while,  
 But if he coude a carpenter begile.  
 And thus they were accorded and ysworne  
 To waite a time, as I have said beforne.  
 Whan Nicholas had don thus every del,  
 And thacked hire about the lendes wel,  
 He kissed hire swete, and taketh his sautrie,  
 And plaieth fast, and maketh melodie.

Than fell it thus, that to the parish cherche 3307



(Of Cristes owen werkes for to werche) 3308

This good wif went upon a holy day :  
 Hire forehed shone as bright as any day,  
 So was it washen, whan she lete hire werk.

Now was ther of that chirche a parish clerk,  
 The which that was ycleped Absolon.

Crulle was his here, and as the gold it shon,  
 And strouted as a fanne large and brode ;  
 Ful streight and even lay his joly shode. 3316

His rode was red, his eyen grey as goos,  
 With Poules windowes corven on his shoos.

In hosen red he went ful fetisly.

Yclad he was ful smal and proprely,

All in a kirtel of a light waget ;

Ful faire and thicke ben the pointes set.,

And therupon he had a gay surprise,

As white as is the blosme upon the rise. 3324

A mery child he was, so God me save ;  
 Wel coud he leten blod, and clippe, and shave,  
 And make a chartre of lond, and a quitance.

In twenty manere coud he trip and dance,

(After the scole of Oxenforde tho)

And with his legges casten to and fro ;

And playen songes on a smal ribible ;

Therto he song somtime a loud quible.

And as wel coud he play on a giterne. 3333

In all the town n'as brewhous ne taverne,  
 That he nevisited with his solas,  
 Ther as that any gaillard tapstere was.  
 But soth to say he was somdel squaimous  
 Of farting, and of speche dangerous.

3334

This Absolon, that joly was and gay,  
 Goth with a censer on the holy day,  
 Censing the wives of the parish faste ;  
 And many a lovely loke he on hem caste,  
 And namely on this carpenteres wif :  
 To loke on hire him thought a mery lif.  
 She was so propre, and swete, and likerous.  
 I dare wel sain, if she had ben a mous,  
 And he a cat, he wolde hire hente anon.

3342

This parish clerk, this joly Absolon,  
 Hath in his herte swiche a love-longing,  
 That of no wif toke he non offering ;  
 For curtesie, he sayd, he n'olde non.

3350

The moone at night ful clere and bryghte shon,  
 And Absolon his giterne hath ytake,  
 For paramours he thoughte for to wake.  
 And forth he goth, jolif and amorous,  
 Til he came to the carpenteres hous,  
 A litel after the cockes had ycrow,  
 And dressed him up by a shot window,  
 That was upon the carpenteres wal.

3359

He singeth in his vois gentil and smal;  
 Now, dere lady,—if thy wille be,  
 I pray you that ye—wol rewe on me;  
 Ful wel accordant to his giterning.

3360

This carpenter awoke, and herd him sing,  
 And spake unto his wif, and said anon,  
 What, Alison, heres thou not Absolon,  
 That chanteth thus under our boures wal?  
 And she answerd hire husband therwithal;  
 Yes, God wot, John, I here him every del.

3368

This passeth forth; what wol ye bet than wel?  
 Fro day to day this joly Absolon  
 So loveth hire, that him is wo-begon.  
 He waketh all the night, and all the day,  
 He kembeth his lockes brode, and made him gay.  
 He woeth hire by menes and brocage,  
 And swore he wolde ben hire owen page.

3376

He singeth brokking as a nightingale.  
 He sent hire pinnes, methe, and spiced ale,  
 And wafres piping hot out of the glede:  
 And for she was of toun, he profered mede.  
 For som folk wol be wonnen for richesse,  
 And som for strokes, and som with gentillesse.

Somtime to shew his lightnèsse' and maistrie,  
 He plaieth Herode on a skaffold hie.  
 But what availeth him as in this cas?

3385

So loveth she this hendy Nicholas, 3386  
 That Absolon may blow the buckes horne :  
 He ne had for his labour but a scorne .  
 And thus she maketh Absolon hire ape,  
 And all his earnest tourneth to a jape.  
 Ful soth is this proverbe, it is no lie ;  
 Men say right thus alway ; the neighe slie  
 Maketh oft time the fer leef to be lothe.  
 For though that Absolon be wood or wrothe, 3394  
 Because that he fer was from hire sight,  
 This neighe Nicholas stood in his light.

Now bere thee wel, thou hendy Nicholas,  
 For Absolon may waile and sing alas.

And so befell that on a Saturday,  
 This carpenter was gon to Osenay,  
 And hendy Nicholas and Alison  
 Accorded ben to this conclusion, 3402  
 That Nicholas shal shapen him a wile  
 This sely jalous husband to begile ;  
 And if so were the game went aright,  
 She shuld slepe in his armes alle night,  
 For this was hire desire and his also.  
 And right anon, withouten wordes mo,  
 This Nicholas no lenger wolde tarie,  
 But doth ful soft unto his chambre carie  
 Both mete and drinke for a day or twey. 3411

And to hire husbond bad hire for to sey,  
 If that he axed after Nicholas,  
 She shulde say, she n'iste not wher he was ;  
 Of all the day she saw him not with eye.

3412

She trowed he was in som maladie,  
 For for no crie hire maiden coud him calle  
 He n'olde answer, for nothing that might falle.

Thus passeth forth all thilke Saturday,  
 That Nicholas still in his chambre lay,  
 And ete, and slept, and dide what him list  
 Til Sunday, that the sonne goth to rest.

3420

This sely carpenter hath gret meryaile  
 Of Nicholas, or what thing might him aile,  
 And said ; I am adrad by Seint Thomas  
 It stondesth not aright with Nicholas :  
 God shilde that he died sodenly.

This world is now ful tikel sikerly.

3428

I saw to-day a corps yborne to cherche,  
 That now on Monday last I saw him werche.

Go up (quod he unto his knave) anon ;  
 Clepe at his dore, or knocke with a ston :  
 Loke how it is, and tell me boldely.

This knave goth him up ful sturdely,  
 And at the chambre dore while that he stood,  
 He cried and knocked as that he were wood :  
 What how ? what do ye, maister Nicholay ?

3437 ♦

How may ye slepen all the longe day?

3438

But all for nought, he herde not a word.

An hole he fond ful low upon the bord,

Ther as the cat was wont in for to crepe,

And at that hole he loked in ful depe,

And at the last he had of him a sight.

This Nicholas sat ever gaping upright,

As he had kyked on the newe mone.

Adoun he goth, and telleth his maister sone, 3446

In what array he saw this ilke man.

This carpenter to blissen him began,

And said; Now helpe us Seinte Frideswide.

A man wote litel what shal him betide.

This man is fallen, with his astronomie

In som woodnesse or in som agonie.

I thought ay wel how that it shulde be.

Men shulde not knowe of Goddes privetee. 3454

Ya, blessed be alway a lewed man,

That nought but only his beleve can.

So ferd another clerk with astronomie;

He walked in the felde for to prie

Upon the sterres, what ther shuld befall,

Til he was in a marlepit yfalle.

He saw not that. But yet by Seint Thomas

Me reweth sore of hendy Nicholas:

He shal be rated of his studying,

3463

If that I may, by Jesus heven king.

3464

Get me a staf, that I may underspore  
While that thou, Robin, hevest of the dore :  
He shal out of his studying, as I gesse.  
And to the chambre dore he gan him dresse.  
His knave was a strong carl for the nones,  
And by the haspe he haf it of at ones ;  
Into the flore the dore fell anon.

• This Nicholas sat ay as stille as ston,  
And ever he gaped upward into the eire.

3472

This carpenter wend he were in despeire,  
And hent him by the shulders mightily,  
And shoke him hard, and cried spitously ;  
What, Nicholas ? what how man ? loke adoun :  
Awake, and thinke on Cristes passioun.

I crouche thee from elves, and from wightes,  
Therwith the nightspel said he anon rightes,  
On foure halves of the hous aboute,  
And on the threswold of the dore withoute.

3480

Jesu Crist, and Seint Benedight,  
Blisse this hous from every wicked wight,  
Fro the nightes mare, the wite Pater-noster ;  
Wher wonest thou Seint Peters suster ?

And at the last this hendy Nicholas  
Gan for to siken sore, and said ; Alas !  
Shal all the world be lost eftsones now ?

3488

This carpenter answered; What saiest thou? 3490  
 What? thinke on God, as we do, men that swinke.

This Nicholas answered; Fetch me a drinke;  
 And after wol I speke in privetee  
 Of certain thing that toucheth thee and me:  
 I wol tell it non other man certain.

This carpenter goth doun, and cometh again,  
 And brought of mighty ale a large quart; 3497  
 And whan that eche of hem had dronken his part,  
 This Nicholas his dore faste shette,  
 And doun the carpenter by him he sette,  
 And saide; John, min hoste lefe and dere,  
 Thou shalt upon thy trouthe swere me here,  
 That to no wight thou shalt my conseil wrey:  
 For it is Cristes conseil that I say,  
 And if thou tell it man, thou art forlore:  
 For this vengeance thou shalt have therfore, 3506  
 That if thou wreye me, thou shalt be wood.

Nay, Crist forbede it for his holy blood,  
 Quod tho this sely man; I am no labbe,  
 Ne though I say it, I n'am not lefe to gabbe.  
 Say what thou wolt, I shal it never telle  
 To child ne wif, by him that harwed helle.

Now, John, (quod Nicholas) I wol not lie,  
 I have yfounde in min astrologie,  
 As I have loked in the moone bright, 3515



That now on Monday next, at quarter night, 3516  
 Shal fall a rain, and that so wild and wood  
 That half so gret was never Noes flood.

This world (he said) in lesse than in an houre  
 Shal al be dreint, so hidous is the shoure:  
 Thus shal mankinde drenche, and lese hir lif.

This carpenter answerd; Alas my wif!

And shal she drenche? alas min Alisoun!

\*For sorwe of this he fell almost adoun, 3524  
 And said; Is ther no remedy in this cas?

Why yes, for God, quod hendy Nicholas;

If thou wolt werken after lore and rede;

Thou maist not werken after thin owen hede.

For thus saith Salomon, that was ful trewe;

Werke all by conseil, and thou shalt not rew.

And if thou werken wolt by good conseil,

I undertake, withouten mast or seyl, 3530

Yet shal I saveh hire, and thee and me.

Hast thou not herd how saved was Noe,

Whan that our Lord had warned him beforen,

That al the world with water shuld be lorne?

Yes, (quod this carpenter) ful yore ago.

Hast thou not herd (quod Nicholas) also

The sorwe of Noe with his felawship,

Or that he mighte get his wif to ship?

Him had be lever, I dare wel undertake, 3541

At thilke time, than all his wethers blake, 3542  
 That she had had a ship hiréself alone.  
 And therefore wost thou what is best to done?

This axeth hast, and of an hastif thing  
 Men may not preche and maken tarying.

Now go get us fast into this in

A kneding trough or elles a kemelyn,  
 For eche of us; but loke that they ben large,  
 In which we mowen swimme as in a barge: 3550

And have therin vitaille suffisant

But for a day; fie on the remenant;

The water shall aslake and gon away

Abouten prime upon the nexte day.

But Robin may not wete of this, thy knave,

Ne eke thy mayden Gille I may not save:

Axe not why: for though thou axe me,

I wol not tellen Goddes privetee. 3558

Sufficeth thee, but if thy wittes madde,

To have as gret a grace as Noe hadde.

Thy wif shal I wel saven out of doute.

Go now thy way, and spede thee hereabout.

But whan thou hast for hire, and thee, and me,

Ygeten us these kneding tubbes thre,

Than shalt thou hang hem in the rooffe ful hie,

That no man of our purveyance espie:

And whan thou hast don thus as I have said, 3567

And hast our vitaille faire in hem ylaid, 3568  
 And eke an axe to smite the cord a-two  
 Whan that the water cometh, that we may go,  
 And breke an hole on high upon the gable  
 Unto the gardin ward, over the stable,  
 That we may frely passen forth our way,  
 Whan that the grete shoure is gon away.  
 Than shal thou swim as mery, I undertake,  
 As doth the white doke after hire drake : 3576  
 Than wol I clepe, How Alison, how John,  
 Be mery : for the flood wol passe anon.  
 And thou wolt sain, Haile maister Nicholay,  
 Good morwe, I see thee wel, for it is day.  
 And than shall we be lordes all our lif  
 Of all the world, as Noe and his wif.  
 But of o thing I warne thee ful right,  
 Be wel avised on that ilke night, 3590  
 That we ben entred into shippes bord,  
 That non of us ne speke not o word,  
 Ne clepe ne erie, but be in his praiere,  
 For it is Goddes owen heste dere.

Thy wif and thou moste hangen fer a-twinne,  
 For that betwixen you shal be no sinne,  
 No more in loking than ther shal in dede.  
 This ordinance is said ; go, God thee spede.  
 To-morwe at night, whan men ben all aslepe, 3593

Into our kneding tubbes wol we crepe, . . . 3594  
 And sitten ther, abiding Guddes grace.

Go now thy way, I have no lenger space;

To make of this no lenger sermoning :

Men sain thus : send the wise, and say nothing :

Thou art, so wise, it nedeth thee nought teche.

Go, save our lives, and that I thee beseche.

This sely carpenter goth forth his way,

Ful oft he said alas, and wala wa, . . . 3602

And to his wif he told his privetee,

And she was ware, and knew it bet than he

What all this queinte cast was for to sey.

But natheles she ferde as she wold dey,

And said ; Alas ! go forth thy way anon,

Helpe us to scape, or we be ded eche on.

I am thy trewe veray wedded wif ;

Go, dere spouse, and helpe to save our lif. . . . 3610

Lo, what a gret thing is affection,

Men may die of imagination,

So depe may impression be take.

This sely carpenter beginneth quake :

Him thinketh veraily that he may see

Noes flood comen walwing as the see

To drenchen. Alison, his hony dere.

He wepeth, wailleth, maketh sory chere ;

He siketh, with ful many a sory swough. . . . 3619

He goth, and geteth him a kneding trough, 3620  
 And after a tubbe, and a kemelin,  
 And prively he sent hem to<sup>n</sup> his in :  
 And heng hem in the roof in privetee.  
 His owen hond than made he ladders three,  
 To climben by the renges and the stalkes,  
 Unto the tubbes honging in the balkes ;  
 And vitailed bothe kemelin, trough and tubbe,  
 With bred and chese, and good ale in a jubbe, 3623  
 Sufficing right ynow as for a day.

But er that he had made all this array,  
 He sent his knave, and eke his wenche also  
 Upon his nede to London for to go.  
 And on the Monday, whan it drew to night,  
 He shette his dore, withouten candel light,  
 And dressed all thing as it shulde bee.  
 And shortly up they clomben alle three. 3626  
 They sitten stille wel a furlong way :  
 Now, *Pater noster*, clum, said Nicholay,  
 And clum, quod John, and clum, said Alison :  
 This carpenter said his devotion,  
 And still he sit, and biddeth his praier,  
 Awaiting on the rain, if he it here.

The dede slepe, for wery besinesse,  
 Fell on this carpenter, right as I gesse,  
 Abouten curfew-timé, or litel more. 3629

For travaille of his gost he groneth sore,  
 And eft he routeth, for his hed mislay,  
 Doun of the ladder stalketh Nicholay,  
 And Alison ful soft adoun hire spedde.

3646

Withouten wordes mo they went to bedde,  
 Ther as the carpenter was wont to lie ;  
 Ther was the revel, and the melodie.  
 And thus lith Alison, and Nicholas,  
 In busenese of mirthe and in solas,  
 Til that the bell of *laudes* gan to ring,  
 And freres in the chancel gon to sing.

3654

This parish clerk, this amorous Absolon,  
 That is for love alway so wo-begon,  
 Upon the Monday was at Osenay  
 With compaignie, him to disport and play ;  
 And asked upon cas a cloisterer  
 Ful prively after John the carpenter ;  
 And he drew him apart out of the chirche.  
 He said, I n'ot ; I saw him not here wirche  
 Sith Saturday ; I trow that he be went  
 For timbre, ther our abbot hath him senti  
 For he is wont for timbre for to go,  
 And dwellen at the Grange a day or two :  
 Or elles he is at his hous certain . \*

3662

Wher that he be, I cannot sothly sain.

This Absolon ful joly was and light,

3671

And thoughtē, now is time to wake al night; 3672  
 For sikerly, I saw him nat stiring  
 About his dore, sin day began to spring.

So mote I thrive, I shal at cockes crow  
 Ful prively go knocke at his window,  
 That stant ful low upon his boures wall :  
 To Alison wol I now tellen all  
 My love-longing; for yet I shall not misse,  
 That at the leste way I shal hire kisse. 3680  
 Some maner comfort shal I have parfay,  
 My mouth hath itched all this longe day :  
 That is a signe of kissing at the leste.

All night me mette eke, I was at a feste.  
 Therefore I wol go slepe an houre or twey,  
 And all the night than wol I wake and pley.

Whan that the firstē cock hath crowe, anon

Up rist this joly lover Absolon, 3688

And him arayeth gay, at point devise.

But first he cheweth grein and licorise,

To smellen sote, or he had spoke with here.

Under his tonge a trewe love he bere,

For therby wend he to ben gracious.

He cometh to the carpenteres hous,

And still he stant under the shot window ;

Unto his brest it raught, it was so low ;

And soft he cougheth with a semisoun. 3697

What do ye honycombe, swete Alisoun? 3698

My faire bird, my swete sinamome,

Awaketh, lemman min, and speketh to me.

Ful litel thinken ye upon my wo,

That for your love I swete ther as I go.

No wonder is though that I swelte and swete.

I mournè as doth a lamb after the tete.

Ywis, lemman, I have swiche love-longing,

That like a turtel trewe is my mourning. 3706

I may not ete no more than a maid.

Go fro the window, jacke fool, she said :

As helpe me God, it wol not be, compame.

I love another, or elles I were to blame,

Wel bet than thee by Jesu, Absolon.

Go forth thy way, or I wol cast a ston ;

And let me slepe ; a twenty divel way.

Alas ! (quod Absolon) and wala wa ! 3714

That trewe love was ever so yvel besette :

Than kisse me ; sin that it may be no bette,

For Jesus love, and for the love of me.

Wilt thou than go thy way therwith ? quod she.

Ya certes, lemman, quod this Absolon.

Than make thee redy, (quod she) I come anon.

This Absolon doun set him on his knees,

And saide ; I am a lord at all degrees :

For after this I hope ther cometh more ; 3723



Lemman, thy grace, and, swete bird, thyn ore. 3724

The window she undoth, and that in haste.

Have don, (quod she) come of, and spede thee faste,  
Lest that our neigheboures thee espie.

This Absolon gan wipe his mouth ful drie.  
Derke was the night, as pitch or as the cole,  
And at the window she put out hire hole,  
And Absolon him felle ne bet ne wers,  
But with his mouth he kist hire naked ers 3732  
Ful savorly, er he was ware of this.

Abak he sterte, and thought it was amis,  
For wel he wist a woman hath no berd.  
He felt a thing all rowe, and long yherd,  
And saide; fy, alas! what have I do?

Te he, quod she, and clapt the window to;  
And Absolon goth forth a sory pas.

A berd, a berd, said henty Nicholas; 3740  
By goddes *corpus*, this goth faire and wel.

This sely Absolon herd every del,  
And on his lippe he gan for anger bite;  
And to himself he said, I shal thee quite.  
Who rubbeth now, who froteth now his lippes  
With dust, with sond, with straw, with cloth, with  
But Absolon? that saith full oft, alas! [chippes  
My soule betake I unto Sathanas,  
But me were lever than all this toun (quod he) 3740

Of this despit awroken for to be. 3750  
 Alas ! alas ! that I ne had yblent.  
 His hote love is cold, and all yqueint.  
 For fro that time that he had kist hire ers,  
 Of paramours ne raught he not a kers,  
 For he was heled of his maladie ;  
 Ful often paramours he gan defie,  
 And wepe as doth a child that is ybete.  
 A softe pas he went him over the strete 3758  
 Until a smith, men callen dan Gerveis,  
 That in his forge smithed plow-harneis ;  
 He sharpeth share and cultre besily.  
 This Absolon knocketh all esily,  
 And said ; Undo, Gerveis, and that anon.  
 What, who art thou ? It am I Absolon.  
 What ? Absolon, what ? Cristes swete tre,  
 Why rise ye so rath ? ey *benedicite*, 3766  
 What eileth you ? some gay girle, God it wote,  
 Hath brought you thus upon the viretote :  
 By Seint Neote, ye wote wel what I mene.  
 This Absolon ne raughte not a bene  
 Of all his play ; no word again he yaf.  
 He hadde more tawe on his distaf  
 Than Gerveis knew, and saide ; Frennd so dere,  
 That hote culter in the cheminee here  
 As lene it me, I have therwith to don : 3775

I wol it bring again to thee ful sone. 3776

Gerveis answered ; Certes, were it gold,  
Or in a poke nobles all untold,

Thou shuldest it have, as I am trewe smith.

Ey, Cristes foot, what wol ye don therwith ?

Therof, quod Absolon, be as be may ;

I shal wel tellen thee another day :

And caught the culter by the colde stele.

Ful soft out at the dore he gan to stele, 3784

And went unto the carpenteres wall.

He coughed first, and knocked therwithall

Upon the window, right as he did er.

This Alison answered ; Who is ther  
That knocketh so ? I warrant him a thefe.

Nay, nay, (quod he) God wot, my swete lefe,  
I am thin Absolon, thy dereling.

Of gold, (quod he) I have thee brought a ring, 3792

My mother yave it me, so God me save,

Ful fine it is, and therto wel ygrave :

This wol I yeven thee, if thou me kisse.

This Nicholas was risen for to pisse,  
And thought he wolde amenden all the jape,

He shulde kisse his ers er that he scape :

And up the window did he hastily,

And out his ers he putteth prively

Over the buttoke, to the hanche bon. 3801

And therwith spake this clerk, this Absolon, 3802  
 Speke swete bird, I n'ot not wher thou art.

This Nicholas anon let fleen a fart,  
 As gret as it had ben a thonder dint,  
 That with the stroke he was wel nie yblint :  
 And he was redy with his yren hote,  
 And Nicholas amid the ers he smote.

Off goth the skinne an hondbrede al aboute.  
 The hote culter brenned so his toute, 3810  
 That for the smert he wened for to die ;  
 As he were wood, for wo he gan to crie,  
 Help, water, water, help for Goddes herte.

This carpenter out of his slomber sterte,  
 And herd on crie water, as he were wood,  
 And thought, alas, now cometh Noes flood.  
 He set him up withouten wordes mo,  
 And with his axe he smote the cord atwo ; 3818  
 And doun goth all ; he fond neyther to selle  
 Ne breed ne ale, til he came to the selle,  
 Upon the flore, and ther aswoune he lay.

Up sterten Alison and Nicholay,  
 And crieden, out and harow ! in the strete.  
 The neigheboures bothe smale and grete  
 In rannen, for to gauren on this man,  
 That yet aswoune lay, bothe pale and wan :  
 For with the fall he brosten hath his arm. 3827

But stonden he must unto his owen harm,  
 For whan he spake, he was anon bore doun  
 With hendy Nicholas and Alisoun. 3823

They tolden every man that he was wood ;  
 He was agaste so of Noes flood

Thurgh fantasie, that of his vanitee  
 He had ybought him kneding tubbes three,  
 And had hem honged in the roof above ;  
 And that he praied hem for Goddes love 3836  
 To sitten in the roof *par compaignie*.

The folk gan laughen at his fantasie.  
 Into the roof they kyken, and they gape,  
 And turned all his harm into a jape.

For what so that this carpenter answerd,  
 It was for pought, no man his reson herd.  
 With othes gret he was so sworne adoun,  
 That he was holden wood in all the toun. 3844

For everich clerk anon right held with other ;  
 They said, the man was wood, my leve brother ;  
 And every wight gan laughen at this strif.

Thus swived was the carpenteres wif,  
 For all his keping, and his jalousie ;  
 And Absolon hath kist hire nether eye ;  
 And Nicholas is scalded in the toute.  
 This tale is don, and God save all the route. 3852

## THE REVES PROLOGUE.

WHAN folk han laughèd at this nice cas 3853

Of Absolon and hendy Nicholas,

Diverse folk diversely they saide,

But for the more part they lought and plaide ;

Ne at this tale I saw no man him greve,

But it were only Osewold the Reve.

Because he was of carpenteres craft,

A litel ire is in his herte ylaft ;

3860

He gan to grutch and blamen it a lite :

So the ik, quod he, ful wel coude I him quite

With blering of a proude milleres eye,

If that me list to speke of ribaudrie.

But ik am olde ; me list not play for age ;

Gras time is don, my foddre is now forage.

This white top writeth min olde yeres ;

Min herte is also mouled as min heres ;

3868

But if I fare as doth an open-ers ;

That ilke fruit is ever lenger the wers ;

Til it be roten in mullok, or in stre.

We olde men, I drede, so faren we,

Til we be roten, can we not be ripe ;

We hoppe alway, while that the world wol pipe ;

For in our will ther stiketh ever a nayl,

To have an hore hed and a grene tayl,

3876

As hath a leke ; for though our might be gon, 3877  
 Our will desireth folly ever in on :  
 For whan we may not don, than wol we speken,  
 Yet in our ashen cold is fire yreken.

Foure gledes han we, which I shal devise,  
 Avaunting, lying, anger, and covetise.  
 These foure sparkes longen unto elde.  
 Our olde limes mow wel ben unwelde,  
 But will ne shal not failen, that is sothe. 3885  
 And yet have I alway a coltes tothe,  
 As many a yere as it is passed henne,  
 Sin that my tappe of lif began to renne.  
 For sikerly, whan I was borne, anon.  
 Deth drow the tappe of lif, and let it gon :  
 And ever sith hath so the tappe yronne,  
 Til that almost all empty is the tonne.  
 The streme of lif now droppeth on the chimbe. 3893  
 The sely tonge may wel ringe and chimbe  
 Of wretchednesse, that passed is ful yore :  
 With olde folk, save dotage, is no more.

Whan that our Hoste had herd this sermoning,  
 He gan to speke as lordly as a king,  
 And sayde ; What amounteth all this wit ?  
 What ? shall we speke all day of holy writ ?  
 The divel made a Reve for to preche,  
 Or of a souter a shipman, or a leche. 3902

Say forth thy tale, and tary not the time : 3903  
 Lo Depeford, and it is half way prime :  
 Lo Grenewich, ther many a shrew is inne.  
 It were al time thy tale to beginne.

Now, sires, quod this Osewold the Reve,  
 I pray you alle, that ye not you greve,  
 Though I answeere, and somdel set his howve,  
 For leful is with force force off to showve.

This dronken Miller hath ytold us here, 3911  
 How that begiled was a carpentere,  
 Paraventure in scorne, for I am on :  
 And by your leve, I shal him quite anon.  
 Right in his cherles termes wol I speke.  
 I pray to God his necke mote to-breke.  
 He can wel in min eye seen a stalk,  
 But in his owen he cannot seen a balk. 3918

### THE REVES TALE.

At Trompington, not fer fro Cantebrigge,  
 Ther goth a brook, and over that a brigge,†  
 Upon the whiche brook ther stont a melle :  
 And this is veray sothe, that I you telle.  
 A miller was ther dwelling many a day,  
 As any peacok he was proude and gay :  
 Pipen he coude, and fishe, and nettes bete, 3925



And turnen cuppes, and wrastlen wel, and shete. 3926

Ay by his belt he bare a long pavade,

And of a swerd ful trenchant was the blade.

A joly popper bare he in his pouche ;

Ther n'as no man for peril dorst him touche.

A Shefeld thwitel bare he in his hose.

Round was his face, and camuse was his nose.

As pilled as an ape was his skull.

He was a market-beter at the full.

3934

Ther dorste no wight hond upon him legge,

That he ne swore he shuld anon abegge.

A thefe he was forsoth, of corn and melc,

And that a slie, and usant for to stele.

His name was hoten deinous Simekin.

A wif he hadde, comen of noble kin :

The person of the toun hire fäther was.

With hire he yaf ful many a panne of bras,

3942

For that Simkin shuld in his blood allie.

She was yfostered in a nonnerie :

For Simkin wolde no wif, as he sayde,

But she were wel ynourished, and a mayde,

To saven his estat of yemanrie :

And she was proud, and pert as is a pie.

A ful faire sight was it upon hem two.

On holy dayes beforen hire wold he go

With his tipet ybounde about his hed :

3951

And she came after in a gite of red, 3952

And Simkin hadde hosen of the same.

Ther dorste no wight elepen hire but Dame :

Was non so hardy, that went by the way,

That with hire dorste rage or ones play,

But if he wold be slain of Simekin

With pavade, or with knif, or bodekin.

(For jealous folk ben perilous evermo :

Algate they wold hir wives wenden so.) 3960

And eke for she was somdel smoterlich,

She was as digne as water in a dich,

And al so ful of hoker, and of bismare.

Hire thoughte that a ladie shuld hire spare,

What for hire kinrede, and hire nortelrie,

That she had lerned in the nonnerie.

A doughter hadden they betwix hem two

Of twenty yere, withouten any mo, 3968

Saving a child that was of half yere age,

In cradle it lay, and was a propre page.

This wenche thicke and wel ygrowen was,

With camuse nose, and eyen grey as glas ;

With buttokes brode, and brestes round and hie ;

But right faire was hire here, I wol nat lie.

The person of the toun, for she was faire,

In purpos was to maken hire his haire

Both of his catel, and of his mesuage, 3977

And strange he made it of hire mariage. 3978  
 His purpos was for to bestowe hire hie  
 Into som worthy blood of ancestrie.  
 For holy chirches good mote ben despended  
 On holy chirches blood that is descended.  
 Therefore he wolde his holy-blood honoure,  
 Though that he holy chirche shuld devoure.

Gret soken hath this miller out of doute  
 With whete and malt, of all the land aboute ; \* 3986  
 And namely ther was a gret college  
 Men clepe the Soler hall at Cantebrege,  
 Ther was hir whete and eke hir malt yground.  
 And on a day it happed in a stound,  
 Sike lay the manciple on a maladie,  
 Men wenden wisly that he shulde die.  
 For which this miller stale both mele and corn  
 An hundred times more than befor. -3994  
 For therbeforn he stale but curteisly,  
 But now he was a thefe outrageously.  
 For which the wardein chidde and made fare,  
 But therof set the miller not a tare ;  
 He craked bost, and swore it n'as not so.

Than were ther yonge poure scoleres two,  
 That dwelten in the halle of which I say ;  
 Testif they were, and lusty for to play ;  
 And only, for hir mirth and revelrie

Upon the wardein besily they crie, 4004  
 To yeve hem leve but a litel stound,  
 To gon to mille, and seen hir corn yground :  
 And hardily they dorsten lay hir necke,  
 The miller shuld not stele hem half a pecke  
 4 Of corn by sleighte, ne by force hem reve.  
 And at the last the wardein yave hem leve :  
 John highte that on, and Alein highte that other,  
 Of o toun were they born, that highte Strother, 4012  
 Fer in the North, I can not tellen where.

This Alein maketh redy all his gere;  
 And on a hors the sak he cast anon :  
 Forth goth Alein the clerk, and also John,  
 With good swerd and with bokeler by hir side.  
 John knew the way, him needed not no guide,  
 And at the mille the sak adoun he laith.

Alein spake first ; All haile, Simond, in faith, 4020  
 How fares thy faire doughter, and thy wif ?

Alein, welcoïne (quod Simkin) by my lif,  
 And John also : how now, what do ye here ?  
 By God, Simond, (quod John) nede has no pere.  
 Him behoves serve himself that has na swain,  
 Or elles he is a fool, as clerkes sain.  
 Our manciple I hope he wol be ded,  
 Swa werkes ay the wanges in his hed :  
 And therefore is I come, and eke Alein, 4029

To grind our corn and cary it hame agein : 4030  
 I pray you spede us henen that ye may.

It shal be don (quod Simkin) by my fay.  
 What wol ye don while that it is in hand ?  
 By God, right by the hopper wol I stand,  
 (Quod John) and seen how that the corn gas in.  
 Yet saw I never by my fader kin,  
 How that the hopper wagges til and fra.

Alein answered ; John, and wolt thou swa ? 4038  
 Than wol I be benethe by my croun,  
 And see how that the mele falles adoun  
 In til the trogh, that shal be my disport :  
 For, John, in faith I may ben of your sort ;  
 I is as ill a miller as is ye.

This miller smiled at hir nicetee,  
 And thought, all this n'is don but for a wile.  
 They wenen that no man may hem begile, 4046  
 But by my thrift yet shal I blere hir eie,  
 For all the sleighte in hir philosophie.  
 The more queinte knakkes that they make,  
 The more wol I stele whan that I take.  
 In stede of flour yet wol I yeve hem bren.  
 The gretest clerkes ben not the wisest men,  
 As whilom to the wolf thus spake the mare :  
 Of all hir art ne count I not a tare.

Out at the dore he goth ful prively, 4055

Whan that he saw his time, softly.

4056

He loketh up and doun, til he hath found

The clerkes hors, ther as he stood ybound

Behind the mille, under a levesell :

And to the hors he goth him faire and well,

And stripeth of the bridel right anon.

• And whan the hors was laus, he gan to gon

Toward the fen, ther wilde mares renne,

And forth, with wehee, thurgh thick and thinne. 4064

This miller goth again, no word he said,

But doth his note, and with these clerkes plaid,

Till that hir corn was faire and wel yground.

And whan the mele is sacked and ybound,

This John goth out, and fint his hors away,

And gan to crie, harow and wala wa !

Our hors is lost : Alein, for Goddes banes,

Step on thy feet ; come of, man, al at anes : 4072

Alas ! our wardein has his palfrey lorn.

This Alein al forgat both mele and corn ;

Al was out of his mind his husbandrie :

What, whilke way is he gon ? he gan to crie.

The wif came leping inward at a renne,

She sayd ; Alas ! youre hors goth to the fenne

With wilde mares, as fast as he may go.

Unthank come on his hand that bond him so,

And he that better shuld have knit the rein. 4081

Alas ! (quod John) Alein, for Christes pein 4082  
 Lay down thy swerd, and I shal min alswa.  
 I is ful wight, God wate, as is a ra.  
 By Goddes saule he shal not scape us bathe.  
 Why ne had thou put the capel in the lathe ?  
 Ill haile, Alein, by God thou is a fonne.

These sely clerkes han ful fast yronne  
 Toward the fen, bothe Alein and eke John :  
 And whan the miller saw that they were gon, 4090  
 He half a bushel of hir flour hath take,  
 And bad his wif go knede it in a cake.  
 He sayd ; I trow, the clerkes were aferde.  
 Yet can a miller make a clerkes berde,  
 For all his art. Ye, let hem gon hir way.  
 Lo wher they gon. Ye, let the children play :  
 They get him not so lightly by my croun,

These sely clerkes rennen up and down 4098  
 With kepe, kepe ; stand, stand ; jossa, warderere.  
 Ga whistle thou, and I shal kepe him here.  
 But shortly, til that it was veray night  
 They coude not, though they did all hir might,  
 Hir capel catch, he ran alway so fast :  
 Til in a diche they caught him at the last.

Wery and wet, as bestes in the rain,  
 Cometh sely John, and with him cometh Alein.  
 Alas (quod John) the day that I was borne ! 4107

Now are we driven til hething and til scorne. 4108  
 Our corn is stolne, men wol us fonnes calle,  
 Both the wardein, and eke our felawes alle;  
 And namely the miller, wala wa!

Thus plaineth John, as he goth by the way  
 Toward the mille, and bayard in his hond.  
 The miller sitting by the fire he fond,  
 For it was night, and forther might they nought,  
 But for the love of God they him besought 4116  
 Of herberwe and of ese, as for hir peny.

The miller saide agen, if ther be any,  
 Swiche as it is, yet shull ye have your part.  
 Myn hous is streit, but ye have lerned art;  
 Ye can by argumentes maken a place  
 A mile brode, of twenty foot of space.  
 Let see now if this place may suffice,  
 Or make it roume with speche, as is your gise. 4124  
 Now, Simond, (said this John) by Seint Cuthberd  
 Ay is thou mery, and that is faire answerd.  
 I have herd say, man sal take of twa thinges,  
 Slike as he findes, or slike as he bringes.  
 But specially I pray thee, hoste dere,  
 Gar us have mete and drinke, and make us chere,  
 And we sal paien trewely at the full :  
 With empty hand, men may na haukes tull.  
 Lo here our silver redy for to spend. 4133



This miller to the toun his doughter send 4134  
 For ale and bred, and rosted hem a goos,  
 And bond hir hors, he shuld no more go loos :  
 And in his owen chambre hem made a bedde,  
 With shetes and with chalons faire yspredde,  
 Nat from his owen bed ten foot or twelve :  
 His doughter had a bed all by hireselve,  
 Right in the same chambre by and by :  
 It mighte be no bet, and cause why, 4142  
 Ther was no roumer herberwe in the place.  
 They soupen, and they speken of solace,  
 And drinken ever strong ale at the best.  
 Abouten midnight wente they to rest.

Wel hath this miller vernished his hed,  
 Ful pale he was, for-dronken, and nought red.  
 He yoxeth, and he spekeþ thurgh the nose,  
 As he were on the quakke, or on the pose. 4150  
 To bed he goth, and with him goth his wif ;  
 As any jay she light was and jolif,  
 So was hire joly whistle wel ywette.  
 The cradel at hire beddes feet was sette,  
 To rocken, and to yeve the child to souke.  
 And whan that dronken was all in the crouke  
 To bedde went the doughter right anon,  
 To bedde goth Alein, and also John.  
 Ther n'as no more ; nedeth hem no dwale. 4159

This miller hath so wisly bibbed ale, 4160  
 That as an hors he snorteth in his slepe,  
 Ne of his tail behind he toke no kepe.  
 His wif bare him a burdon a ful strong ;  
 Men might hir routing heren a furlong.  
 The wenche routeth eke *par compaignie*.

Alein the clerk that herd this melodie,  
 He poketh John, and sayde : Slepest thou ?  
 Herdest thou ever slike a song er now ? 4163  
 Lo whilke a complin is ymell hem alle.  
 A wilde fire upon hir bodies falle,  
 Wha herkned ever slike a ferly thing ?  
 Ye, they shall have the flour of yvel ending.  
 This lange night ther tides me no reste.  
 But yet na force, all shal be for the beste.  
 For, John, (sayd he) as ever mote I thrive,  
 If that I may, yon wenche wol I swive. 4176  
 Som esement has lawe yshapen us,  
 For, John, ther is a lawe that saieth thus,  
 That if a man in o point be agreved,  
 That in another he shal be releved.  
 Our corn is stolne, sothly it is na nay,  
 And we han had an yvel fit to-day.  
 And sin I shal have nan amendement.  
 Again my losse, I wol have an esement :  
 By Goddes saule, it shal nan other be. 4185

This John answered ; Alein, avise thee : 4186

The miller is a perilous man, he sayde.

And if that he out of his slepe abraide,

He mighte don us bathe a vilanie.

Alein answered ; I count him nat a flie.

And up he rist, and by the wenche he crept.

This wenche lay upright, and faste slept,

Til he so nigh was, er she might espie,

That it had ben to late for to crie : 4194

And shortly for to say, they were at on.

Now play, Alein, for I wol speke of John.

This John lith still a furlong way or two,

And to himself he maketh routh and wo.

Alas ! (quod he) this is a wicked jape ;

Now may I say, that I is but an ape.

Yet has my felaw somewhat for his harme ;

He has the millers doughter in his arme : 4202

He auntred him, and hath his nedes spedde,

And I lie as a draf-sak in my bedde ;

And whan this jape is tald another day,

I shal be halder a daffe or a cokenay :

I wol arise, and aunte it by my fay :

Unhardy is unsely, thus men say.

And up he rose, and softly he went

Unto the cradel; and in his hand it hent,

And bare it soft unto his beddes fete. 4211

Sone after this the wif hire routing lete, 4212  
 And gan awake, and went hire out to pisse,  
 And came again, and gan the cradel misse,  
 And groped here and ther, but she fond non.  
 Alas! (quod she) I had almost misgon.  
 I had almost gon to the clerkes bedde.  
 Ey *benedicite*, than had I foule yspedde.  
 And forth she goth, til she the cradel fond.  
 She gropeth alway forthèr, with hire hond, 4220  
 And fond the bed, and thoughte nat but good,  
 Because that the cradel by it stood,  
 And n'iste wher she was, for it was derk,  
 But faire and wel she crept in by the clerk,  
 And lith ful still, and wold han caught a slepe.  
 Within a while this John the clerk up lepe,  
 And on this goode wif he laieth on sore ;  
 So mery a fit ne had she nat ful yore. 4228  
 He priketh hard and depe, as he were mad.  
 This joly lif han these two clerkes lad,  
 Til that the thridde cok began to sing.  
 Alein wex werie in the morwening,  
 For he had swonken all the longe night,  
 And sayd ; Farewel, Malkin, my swete wight.  
 The day is come, I may no longer bide,  
 But evermo, wher so I go or ride,  
 I is thin awen clerk, so have I hele. 4237

Now, dere lemman, quod she, go farewele : 4238

But or thou go, o thing I wol thee tell.

Whan that thou wendest homeward by the mell,

Right at the entree of the dore behind

Thou shalt a cake of half a bushel find,

That was ymaked of thin owen mele,

Which that I halpe my fader for to stele.

And goode lemman, God thee save and kepe:

And with that word she gan almost to wepe. 4246

Alein uprist and thought, er that it daw

I wol go crepen in by my felaw :

And fond the cradel at his hand anon.

By God, thought he, all wrang I have misgon :

My hed is tottie of my swink to night,

That maketh me that I go nat aright.

I wot wel by the cradel I have misgo ;

Here lith the miller and his wif also. 4254

And forth he goth a twenty divel way

Unto the bed, ther as the miller lay.

He wend have copen by his felaw John,

And by the miller in he crept anon,

And caught him by the nekke, and gan him strake,

And sayd ; Thou John, thou swinshed awake,

For Cristes saule, and here a noble game :

For by that lord that called is Seint Jame,

As I have thries as in this short night 4253

Swived the millers daughter bolt-upright, 4264  
 While thou hast as a coward ben agast.

Ye, false harlot, quod the miller, hast ?

A, false traitour, false clerk, (quod he)  
 Thou shalt be ded by Goddes dignitee,  
 Who dorste be so bold to disparage  
 My daughter, that is come of swiche linage.

And by the throte-bolle he caught Alein,  
 And he him hent despitously again, 4272

And on the nose he smote him with his fist ;  
 Doun ran the bloody streme upon his brest :  
 And in the flore with nose and mouth to-broke  
 They walwe, as don two pigges in a pöke.

And up they gon, and doun again anon,  
 Til that the miller sporned at a ston,  
 And doun he fell backward upon his wif,  
 That wiste nothing of this nice strif : 4280

For she was fall aslepe a litel wight  
 With John the clerk, that waked had all night :  
 And with the fall out of hire slepe she braide.  
 Helpe, holy crois of Bromeholme, (she sayde)

*In manus tuas, Lord, to thee I call.*

Awake, Simond, the fend is on me fall ;  
 Myn herte is broken ; helpe ; I n'am but ded ;  
 Ther lith on up my wombe and up myn hed.  
 Helpe, Simkin, for the false clerkes fight. 4289

This John stert up as fast as ever he might, 4290  
 And graspeth by the walles to and fro  
 To find a staf, and she stert up also,  
 And knew the estres bet than did this John,  
 And by the wall she toke a staf anon :  
 And saw a litel shemering of a light,  
 For at an hole in shone the mone bright,  
 And by that light she saw hem bothe two,  
 But sikerly she n'iste who was who, 4298  
 But as she saw a white thing in hire eye.  
 And whan she gan this white thing espie,  
 She wend the clerk had wered a volupere ;  
 And with the staf she drow ay nere and nere,  
 And wend han hit this Alein atte full,  
 And smote the miller on the pilled skull,  
 That down he goth, and cried, harow ! I die.  
 These clerkes bete him wel, and let him lie, 4306  
 And greithen hem, and take hir hors anon,  
 And eke hir mele, and on hir way they gon :  
 And at the mille dore eke they toke hir cake  
 Of half a bushel flour, ful wel ybake.

Thus is the proude miller wel ybete,  
 And hath ylost the grinding of the whete,  
 And paid for the souper every del  
 Of Alein and of John, that bete him wel ;  
 His wif is swived, and his daughter als ; 4315

Lo, swiche it is a miller to be fals. 4316  
 And therefore this proverbe is sayd ful soth,  
 Him thar not winnen wel that evil doth ;  
 A gilour shal himself begiled be :  
 And God that siteth hie in magestee  
 \* Savey all this compaignie, gret and smale.  
 Thus have I quit the miller in my tale. 4322

## THE COKES PROLOGUE.

THE Coke of London, while the Reve spake,  
 For joye (him thought) he clawed him on the bak :..  
 A ha (quod he) for Cristes passion,  
 This miller had a sharpe conclusion,  
 Upon this argument of herbergage.  
 Wel sayde Salomon in his langage,  
 Ne bring not every man into thin hous, 4329  
 For herberwing by night is perilous.  
 Wel ought a man avised for to be  
 Whom that he brought into his privetee.  
 I pray to God so yeve me sorwe and care,  
 \* If ever, sithen I highte Hodge of Ware,  
 Herd I a miller bet ysette a-werk ;  
 He had a jape of malice in the derk.  
 But God forbede that we stinten here,  
 And therfore if ye vouchen sauf to here 4338



A tale of me that am a poure man, 4339  
 I wol you tell as wel as ever I can  
 A litel jape that fell in our citee.

Our Hoste answerd and sayde; I grant it thee :  
 Now-tell on, Roger, and loke that it be good,  
 For many a pastee hast thou letten blood,  
 And many a Jacke of Dover hast thou sold,  
 That hath been twies hot and twies cold.

Of many a pilgrim hast thou Cristes curse, 4347  
 For of thy perselee yet fare they the werse,  
 That they han eten in thy stoble goos :  
 For in thy shop goth many a flie loos.  
 Now tell on, gentil Roger by thy name,  
 But yet I pray thee be not wroth for game ;  
 A man may say ful soth in game and play.

Thou sayst ful soth, quod Roger, by my fay ;  
 But soth play *quade spel*, as the Fleming saith : 4355  
 And therefore, Herry Bailly, by thy faith,  
 Be thou not wroth, or we departen here,  
 Though that my tale be of an hostelere.  
 But natheles, I wol not telle it yet,  
 But er we part, ywis thou shalt be quit.  
 And therwithal he lough and made chere,  
 And sayd his tale, as ye shul after here. 4362

## THE COKES TALE.

A PRENTIS whilom dwelt in our citee, 4363  
 And of a craft of vitailleurs was he :  
 Gaillard he was, as goldfinch in the shawe,  
 Brounte as a bery, a propre short felawe :  
 With lokkes blake, kembed ful fetisly.  
 Dancen he coude so wel and jolily,  
 That he was cleped Perkin Revelour.  
 He was as ful of love and paramour, 4370  
 As is the hive ful of hony swete ;  
 Wel was the wenche with him mighte mete.  
 At every bridale would he sing and hoppe ;  
 He loved bet the tavernne than the shoppe.  
 For whan ther any riding was in Chepe,  
 Out of the shoppe thider wold he lepe,  
 And til that he had all the sight ysein,  
 And danced wel, He wold not come agein ; 4375  
 And gadred him a meinie of his sort,  
 To hoppe and sing, and maken swiche disport :  
 And ther they setten steven for to mete 4380  
 To plaien at the dis in swiche a strete.  
 For in the toun ne was ther no prentis,  
 That fairer coude caste a pair of dis  
 Than Perkin coude, and therto he was fre 4385  
 Of his dispence, in place of privetee. 4386

That fond his maister wel in his chaffare, 4387  
 For often time he fond his box ful bare.

For sothly, a prentis, a revelour,  
 That hanteth dis, riot and paramour,  
 His maister shal it in his shoppe abie,  
 Al have he no part of the minstralcie.  
 For theft and riot they ben convertible,  
 Al can they play on giterne or ribble.  
 Revel and trowth, as in a low degree, 4395  
 They ben ful wroth all day, as men may see.

This joly prentis with his maister abode,  
 Til he was neigh out of his prentishode,  
 Al were he snibbed bothe erly and late,  
 And sometime lad with revel to Newgate.  
 But at the last his maister him bethought  
 Upon a day, whan he his paper sought, 4403  
 Of a proverbe, that saith this same word;  
 Wel bet is roten appel out of hord,  
 Than that it rote alle the remenant :  
 So fareth it by a riotous servant ;  
 It is wel lasse harm to let him pace,  
 Than he shende all the servants in the place.  
 Therefore his maister yaf him a quitance,  
 And bad him go, with sorwe and with meschance.  
 And thus this joly prentis had his leve :  
 Now let him riot all the night or leve. 4412

. And for ther n'is no thefe without a louke, 4413  
 That helpeth him to wasten and to souke  
 Of that he briben can, or borwe may,  
 Anon he sent his bed and his array  
 Unto a compere of his owen sort,  
 That loved dis, and riot, and disport ;  
 And had a wif, that held for contenance  
 A shoppe, and swived for hire sustenance. 4420

\* \* \* \* \*

### THE MAN OF LAWES PROLOGUE.

OUR Hoste saw wel, that the brighte sonne  
 The ark of his artificial day had ronne  
 The fourthe part, and half an houre and more ;  
 And though he were not depe expert in lore, •  
 He wiste it was the eighte and twenty day 4425  
 Of April, that is messenger to May ;  
 And saw wel that the shadow of every tree  
 Was as in lengthe of the same quantitee  
 That was the body erect, that caused it ;  
 And therefore by the shadow he toke his wit,  
 That Phebus, which that shone so clere and bright,  
 Degrees was five and fourty clombe on hight ;  
 And for that day, as in that latitude,  
 It was ten of the klok, he gan conclude ; 4434

And sodenly he plight his hors aboute.

Lordings, quod he, I warne you all this route,  
The fourthe partie of this day is gon.

Now for the love of God and of Seint John  
Leseth no time, as ferforth as ye may.

Lordings, the time it wasteth night and day  
And steleth from us, what prively sleping,  
And what thurgh negligence in our waking,  
As doth the streme, that turneth never again,  
Descending fro the montaigne into a plain.

Wel can Senek and many a philosopre  
Bewailen time, more than gold in coffre.

For losse of catel may recovered be,  
But losse of time shendeth us, quod he.

It wol not come again withouten drede,  
No more than wol Malkins maidenhede,  
Whan she hath lost it in hire wantonnesse.

Let us not mouleþ thus in idlenesse.

Sire mar of Lawe, quod he, so have ye blis,  
Tell us a tale anon, as forword is.

Ye ben submitted thurgh your free assent  
To stonde in this cas at my jugement.  
Acquiteth you now, and holdeth your behest;  
Than have ye don your devoir at the lest.

Hoste, quod he, *de par dieux jeo assente*,  
To breken forword is not min entente.

Behest is dette, and I wold hold it fayn 4461  
 'All my behest, I can no better sayn.  
 For swiche lawe.as man yeveth another wight,  
 He shuld himselven usen it by right.  
 Thus wol our text : but natheles certain  
 I can right now no thrifty tale sain,  
 But Chaucer (though he can but lewedly  
 On metres and on riming craftily)  
 Hath sayd hem, in swiche English as he can, 4469  
 Of olde time, as knoweth many a man.  
 And if he have not sayd hem, leve brother,  
 In o book, he hath sayd hem in another.  
 For he hath told of lovers up and doun,  
 Mo than Ovide made of mentioun  
 In his *Epistolis*, that ben ful olde.  
 What shuld I tellen hem, sin they ben tolde ?  
 In youthe he made of Ceys and Alcyon, 4477  
 And sithen hath he spoke of everich on  
 These noble wives, and these lovers eke.  
 Who so that wol his large volume seke  
 Cleped the seintes legende of Cupide :  
 Ther may he se the large woundes wide  
 Of Lucrece, and of Babylon Thisbe ;  
 The swerd of Dido for the false Enee ;  
 The tree of Phillis for hire Demophon ;  
 The plaint of Deianire, and Hermion, 4486

Of Adriane, and Ysiphilee ;  
 The barreine ile standing in the see ;  
 The dreint Leandre for his fayre Hero ;  
 The teres of Heleine, and eke the wo  
 Of Briseide, and of Lademia ;  
 The crueltee of thee, quene Medea,  
 Thy litel children hanging by the hals,  
 For thy Jason, that was of love so fals.  
 O Hipermestra, Penelope, Alceste,  
 Your wifhood he commendeth with the beste.

4495

But certainly no word ne writeth he  
 Of thilke wicke ensample of Canace,  
 That loved hire owen brother sinfully ;  
 (Of all swiche cursed stories I say fy)  
 Or elles of Tyrius Appolonius,  
 How that the cursed king Antiochus  
 Beraft his doughter of hire maidenhede,  
 That is so horrible a tale for to rede,  
 Whan he hire threw upon the pavement.  
 And therefore he of ful avisement  
 N'old never write in non of his sermons  
 Of swiche unkinde abominations ;  
 Ne I wol non reherse, if that I may.  
 But of my tale how shal I don this day ?  
 Me were loth to be likened douteles  
 To Muses, that men clepe Pierides,

4503

4512

(*Metamorphoseos* wote what I mene),  
 But natheles I recche not a bene,  
 Though I come after him with hawebake,  
 I speke in prose, and let him rimes make.  
 And with that word, he with a sobre chere  
 Began his tale, and sayde, as ye shull here.

4513

## THE MAN OF LAWES TALE.

O SCATHFUL harm, condition of poverte,  
 With thirst, with cold, with hunger so confounded,  
 To asken helpe thee shameth in thin herte,  
 If thou non ask, so sore art thou ywounded,  
 That veray nede unwrappeth al thy wound hid.  
 Maugre thin hed thou must for indigence  
 Or stele, or begge, or borwe thy dispence.

4519

Thou blamest Crist, and sayst ful bitterly,  
 He misdeparteth richesse temporal;  
 Thy neighebour thou witest sinfully,  
 And sayst, thou hast a litle, and he hath all:  
 Parfay (sayst thou) sometime he reken shall,  
 Whan that his tayl shal brennen in the glede,  
 For he nought helpeth needful in hir nede.

4526

Herken what is the sentence of the wise,

4533



Bet is to dien than have indigence. 4534  
 Thy selve neighebour wol thee despise,  
 If thou be poure, farewel thy reverence.  
 Yet of the wise man take this sentence,  
 Alle the dayes of poure men ben wicke,  
 Beware therefore or thou come to that pricke.

If thou be poure, thy brother hateth thee,  
 And all thy frendes fleen fro thee, alas! 4541  
 O riche marchants, ful of wele ben ye,  
 O noble, o prudent folk, as in this cas,  
 Your bagges ben not filled with ambes as,  
 But with sis cink, that renneth for your chance;  
 At Cristenmasse mery may ye dance.

Ye seken lond and see for your winninges,  
 As wise folk ye knowen all th'estat 4548  
 Of regnes, ye ben fathers of tidinges,  
 And tales, both of pees and of debat:  
 I were right now, of tales desolat,  
 N'ere that a marchant, gon in many a yere,  
 Me taught a tale, which that ye shull here.

In Surrie whilom dwelt a compaignie  
 Of chapmen rich, and therto sad and trewe, 4555

That wide where senten hir spicerie, 4556  
 Clothes of gold, and satins riche of hewe.  
 Hir chaffare was so thriftly and so newe,  
 That every wight hath deintee to chaffare  
 With hem, and eke to sellen hem hir ware.

Now fell it, that the maisters of that sort  
 Han shapen hem to Rome for to wendè,  
 Were it for chapmanhood or for disport, 4563  
 Non other message wold they thider sende,  
 But comen hemself to Rome, this is the ende :  
 And in swiche place as thought hem avantage  
 For hir entente, they taken hir herbergage!

Sojourned han these marchants in that toun  
 A certain time, as fell to hir plesance :  
 And so befell, that the excellent renoun 4570  
 Of the emperoures doughter dame Custance  
 Reported was, with every circumstance,  
 Unto these Surrien marchants, in swiche wise  
 Fro day to day, as I shal you devise.

This was the comun vois of every man :  
 Our emperour of Rome, God him se,  
 A doughter hath, that sin the world began,  
 To reken as wel hire goodnesse as beaute, 4578

'N'as never swiche another as is she : 4579  
 I pray to God in honour hire sustene,  
 And wold she were of all Europe the quene.

In hire is high beaute withouten pride,  
 Youthe, withouten grened or folie :  
 To all hire werkes vertue is hire guide ;  
 Humblesse hath slaien in hire tyrannie :  
 She is mirroure of alle curtesie, 4586  
 Hire herte is veray chambre of holinesse,  
 Hire hond ministre of fredom for almesse.

And al this vois was soth, as God is trewe,  
 But now to purpos let us turne agein.  
 These marchants han don fraught hir shippes newe,  
 And whan they han this blisful maiden sein,  
 Home to Surrie ben they went ful fayn, 4593  
 And don hir nedes, as they han don yore.  
 And liven in wele, I can say you no more.

Now fell it, that these marchants stood in grace  
 Of him that was the Soudan of Surrie :  
 For whan they came from any strange place  
 He wold of his benigne curtesie  
 Make hem good chere, and besily espie 4600

Tidings of sundry regnes, for to lere 4601  
 The wonders that they mighte seen or here.

Amonges other thinges specially  
 These marchants han him told of dame Custance  
 So gret noblesse, in earnest seriously,  
 That this Soudan hath caught so gret plesance  
 To han hire figure in his remembrance,  
 That all his lust, and all his besy cure. 4608  
 Was for to love hire, while his lif may dure.

Paraventure in thilke large book,  
 Which that men clepe the heven, ywriten was  
 With sterres, whan that he his birthe took,  
 That he for love shuld han his deth, alas !  
 For in the sterres, clerer than is glas,  
 Is writen, God wot, who so coud it rede, 4615  
 The deth of every man withouten drede.

In sterres many a winter therbeforn  
 Was writ the deth of Hector, Achilles,  
 Of Pompey, Julius, or they were born ;  
 The strif of Thebes ; and of Hercules,  
 Of Sampson, Turnus, and of Socrates  
 The deth ; but mennes wittes ben so dull,  
 That no wight can wel rede it at the full. 4623

This Soudan for his prive counce! sent, 4624  
 And shortly of this matere for to pace,  
 He hath to hem declared his entent,  
 And sayd hem certain, but he might have grace  
 To han Custance, within a litel space,  
 He n'as but ded, and charged hem in hie  
 To shapen for his lif som remedie.

Diverse men, diverse thinges saiden ;  
 They argumentes casten up and doun ; 4631  
 Many a subtil reson forth they laiden ;  
 They speken of magike, and abusion ;  
 But finally, as in conclusion,  
 They cannot seen in that non avantage,  
 Ne in non other way, save mariage.

Than saw they therin swiche difficultee 4638  
 By way of reson, for to speke all plain,  
 Because ther was swiche diversitee  
 Betwene hir bothe lawes, that they sayn,  
 They trowen that no cristen prince wold fayn  
 Wedden his child under our lawe swete,  
 That us was yeven by Mahound our prophete.

And he answered : Rather than I lese  
 Custance, I wol be cristened douteles : 4646

I mote ben hires, I may non other chese, 4647  
 I pray you hold your argumènts in pees,  
 Saveth my lif, and beth not reccheles  
 To geten hire that hath my lif in cure,  
 For in this wo I may not long endure.

What nedeth greter dilatation? .

I say, by tretise and ambassatrie,  
 And by the popes mediation, 4654  
 And all the chirche, and all the chevalrie,  
 That in destruction of Maumetrie,  
 And in encrease of Cristes lawe dere,  
 They ben accorded so as ye may here ;

How that the Soudan and his baronage,  
 And all his lieges shuld ycristened be,  
 And he shal han Custance in mariage, 4661  
 And certain gold, I n'ot what quantitee,  
 And hereto finden suffisant suretee.  
 The same accord is sworne on eyther side ;  
 Now, fàir Custance, almighty God thee gide.

Now wolden som men waiten, as I gesse,  
 That I shuld tellen all the purveiance,  
 The which that the emperour of his noblesse  
 Hath shapen for his doughter dame Custance. 4669

THE MAN OF LAWES TALE.

---



Wel may men know that so gret ordinance  
May no man tellen in a litel clause,  
As was arraied for so high a cause.

4670

Bishopes ben shapen with hire for to wende,  
Lordes, ladies, and knightes of renoun,  
And other folk ynow, this is the end.  
And notified is thurghout al the toun,  
That every wight with gret devotioun  
Shuld prayen Crist, that he this mariage  
Receive in gree, and spede this viage.

4677

The day is comen of hire departing,  
I say the woful day fatal is come, \*  
That ther may be no longer tarying,  
But forward they hem dresen all and some.  
Custance, that was with sorwe all overcome,  
Ful pale arist, and dresseth hire to wende,  
For wel she seth ther n'is non other ende.

4684

Alas! what wonder is it though she wept?  
That shal be sent to straunge nation  
Fro frendes, that so tendrely hire kept,  
And to be bounde under subjection  
Of on, she knoweth not his condition.

4691

Housbondes ben all good, and han ben yore, 4692  
 That knowen wives, I dare say no more.

Fader, (she said) thy wretched child Custance,  
 Thy yonge doughter, fostered up so soft,  
 And ye, my moder, my souveraine plesance  
 Over all thing, (out taken Crist on loft)  
 Custance your child hire recommendeth oft  
 Unto your grace; for I shal to Surrië, 4699  
 Ne shal I never seen you more with eye.

Alas! unto the Barbare nation  
 I muste gon, sin that it is your will:  
 But Crist, that starfe for our redemption,  
 So yeve me grace his hestes to fulfill,  
 I wretched woman no force though I spill;  
 Women arn borne to thraldom and penaunce, 4706  
 And to ben under mannes governance.

I trow at Troye whan Pirrus brake the wall,  
 Or Ilion brent, or Thebes the citee,  
 Ne at Rome for the harm thurgh Hanniball,  
 That Romans hath venqueshed times three,  
 N'as herd swiche tendre weping for pitee,  
 As in the chambre was for hire parting,  
 But forth she mote, wheder she wepe or sing. 4714



O firste moving cruel firmament,  
 With thy diurnal swegh that croudest ay,  
 And hurtlest all from Est til Occident,  
 That naturally wold hold another way ;  
 Thy crouding set the heven in swiche array  
 At the beginning of this fierce viage,  
 That cruel Mars hath slain this marriage.

4715

Infortunat ascendent tortuous,  
 Of which the lord is helpeles fall, alas !  
 Out of his angle into the derkest hous.  
 O Mars, o Atyzar, as in this cas ;  
 O feble Mone, unhappy ben thy pas,  
 Thou knittest thee ther thou art not received,  
 Ther thou were wel fro thennes art thou weived

4722

Imprudent emperour of Rome, alas !  
 Was ther no philosophre in al thy toun ?  
 Is no time bet than other in swiche cas ?  
 Of viage is ther non electioun,  
 Namely to folk of high conditioun,  
 Nat whan a rote is of a birth yknowe ?  
 Alas ! we ben to lewed, or to slow.

4729

To ship is brought this woful faire maid  
 Solempnely, with every circumstance :

4737

Now Jesu Crist be with you all, she said. 3738  
 Ther n'is no more, but farewell fair Custance.  
 She peineth hire to make good countenance,  
 And forth I let hire sayle in this manere,  
 And turne I wol againe to my matere.

The mother of the Soudan, well of vices,  
 Espied hath hire sonnes pleine entente,  
 How he wol lete his olde sacrifices :. 4745  
 And right anon she for her conseil sente,  
 And they ben comen, to know what she mente;  
 And whan assembled was this folk in fere,  
 She set hire down, and sayd as ye shul here. -

Lordes, (she sayd) ye knowen everich on,  
 How that my sone in point is for to lete  
 The holy lawes of our Alkaron, 4752  
 Yeven by Goddes messenger Mahomete :  
 But on avow to grete God I hete,  
 The lif shal rather out of my body sterte,  
 Than Mahometes lawe out of myn herte.

What shuld us tiden of this newe lawe  
 But thraldom to our bodies and penance,  
 And afterward in helle to ben drawe,  
 For we reneied Mahound our creance ? 4760

But, lordes, wol ye maken assurance, 4761  
 As I shal say, assenting to my lore?  
 And I shal make us sauf for evermore.

They sworn, and assented every man  
 To live with hire and die, and by hire stond :  
 And everich on, in the best wise he can,  
 To strengthen hire shal all his frendes fond.  
 And she hath this emprise ytaken in hond, 4768  
 Which ye shull heren that I shal devise,  
 And to hem all she spake right in this wise.

We shul first feine us cristendom to take ;  
 Cold water shal not greve us but a lite :  
 And I shal swiche a feste and revel make,  
 That, as I trow, I shal the Soudan quite.  
 For tho his wif be cristened never so white, 4775  
 She shal have nede to wash away the rede,  
 Though she a font of water with hire lede.

O Soudannesse, rote of iniquitee,  
 Virago thou Semyramee the second,  
 O serpent under femininitee,  
 Like to the serpent depe in helle ybound :  
 O feined woman, all that may confound 4782

Vertue and innocēce, thurgh thy malice, 4783  
Is bred in thee, as nest of every vice.

O Sathan envious, sin thilke day  
That thou were chased from our heritage,  
Wel knowest thou to woman the olde way.  
Thou madest Eva bring us in servage,  
Thou wolt fordon this cristen mariage :  
Thin instrument so (wala wa the while!) 4790  
Makest thou of women whan thou wolt begile.

This Soudannesse, whom I thus blame and warrie,  
Let prively hire conseil gon hir way :  
What shuld I in this tale longer tarie ?  
She rideth to the Soudan on a day,  
And sayd him, that she wold reneie hire lay,  
And cristendom of prestes hondes fong, 4797  
Repenting hire she hethen was so long ;

Beseching him to don hire that honour,  
That she might han the cristen folk to fest :  
To plesen hem I wol do my labour.  
The Soudan saith, I wol don at your hest,  
And kneling, thanked hire of that request ;  
So glad he was, he n'iste not what to say,  
She kist hire sone, and home she goth hire way. 4805

Arrived ben these cristen folk to londe . 4306  
 In Surrie, with a gret solempne route,  
 And hastily this Soudan sent his sonde,  
 First to his mother, and all the regne aboute,  
 And sayd, his wif was comen out of doute,  
 And praide hem for to riden again the quene,  
 The honour of his regne to sustene.

Gret was the presse, and riche was th'array 4813  
 Of Surriens and Romaues met in fere.  
 The mother of the Soudan riche and gay,  
 Received hire with all so glad a chere,  
 As any mother might hire doughter dere :  
 And to the nexte citee ther beside  
 A softe pas solempnely they ride.

Nought trow I, the triumph of Julius, 4820  
 Of which that Lucan maketh swiche a bost,  
 Was realler, or more curious,  
 Than was th' assemblee of this blisful host :  
 Butte this scorpion, this wicked gost,  
 The Soudannesse, for all hire flattering  
 Cast under this ful mortally to sting.

The Soudan cometh himself sone after this  
 So really, that wonder is to tell : 4828

And welcometh hire with alle joye and blis. 4829  
 And thus in mirth and joye I let hem dwell.  
 The fruit of this matere is that I tell.  
 Whan time came, men thought it for the best  
 That revel stint, and men go to hir rest.

The time come is, this olde Soudannesse  
 Ordeined hath the feste of which I tolde,  
 And to the feste cristen folk hem dresse 4836  
 In general, ya bothe yonge and olde.  
 Ther may men fest and realtee beholdé,  
 And deintees mo than I can you devise,  
 But all to dere they bought it or they rise.

O soden wo, that ever art successour  
 To worldly blis, spreint is with bitternesse  
 Th' ende of the joye of our worldly labour : 4843  
 Wo occupieth the fyn of our gladnesse.  
 Herken this conseil for thy sikernessee :  
 Upon thy glade day have in thy minde  
 The unware wo of harm, that cometh behinde.

For shortly for to tellen at a word,  
 The Soudan and the cristen everich on  
 Ben all to-hewe, and stiked at the bord,  
 But it were only dame Custance alone. 4851

This olde Soudannesse, this cursed crone, 4852  
 Hath with hire frendes don this cursed dede,  
 For she hireself wold all the contree lede.

Ne ther was Surrien non that was converted,  
 That of the conseil of the Soudan wot,  
 That he n'as all to-hewe, er he astered :  
 And Custance han they taken anon fote-hot,  
 And in a ship all stereles (God wot) 4859  
 They han hire set, and bidden hire lerne sayle  
 Out of Surrie againward to Itaille.

A certain tresor that she thither ladde,  
 And soth to sayn, vitaille gret plentee,  
 They han hire yeven, and clothes eke she hadde,  
 And forth she sayleth in the salte see :  
 O my Custance, ful of benignitee, 4866  
 O emperoures yonge doughter dere,  
 He that is lord of fortune be thy stere.

She blesseth hire, and with ful pitous vois  
 Unto the crois of Crist thus sayde she.  
 O clere, o weleful auter, holy crois,  
 Red of the lambes blood ful of pitee,  
 That wesh the world fro the old iniquitee, 4873

Me fro the fende, and fro his clawes kepe, 4874  
That day that I shal drenchen in the depe.

Victorious tree protection trewe,  
That only worthy were for to bere,  
The king of heven, with his woundes newe,  
The white lamb, that hurt was with a spere;  
Flemer of fendes, out of him and here  
On which thy limmes faithfully extenden, 4881  
Me kepe, and yeve me might my lif to amenden.

Yeres and dayes fleet this creature  
Thurghout the see of Grece, unto the straite  
Of Maroc, as it was hire aventure:  
On many a sory mele now may she baite,  
After hire deth ful often may she waite,  
Or that the wilde waves wol hire drive 4888  
Unto the place ther as she shal arive.

Men mighten asken, why she was not slain?  
Eke at the feste who might hire body save?  
And I answer to that demand again,  
Who saved Daniel in the horrible cave,  
Ther every wight, save he, master or knave,  
Was with the leon frette, or he asterte?  
No wight but God, that he bare in his herte. 4896



God list to shew his wonderful miracle 4897  
 In hire, for we shuld seen his mighty werkes :  
 Crist, which that is to every harm triacle,  
 By certain menes oft, as knowen clerkes,  
 Doth thing for certain ende, that ful derke is  
 To mannes wit, that for our ignorance  
 Ne can nat know his prudent purveiance.

Now sith she was not at the feste yslawe, 4904  
 Who kepte hire fro the drenching in the see ?  
 Who kepte Jonas in the fishes mawe,  
 Til he was spouted up at Ninivee ?  
 Wel may mien know, it was no wight but he  
 That kept the peple Ebraike fro drenching,  
 With drye feet thurghout the see passing.

Who bade the foure spirits of tempest, 4911  
 That power han to anoyen lond and see,  
 Both north and south, and also west and est,  
 Anoyen neyther see, ne lond, ne tree ?  
 Sothly the commander of that was he  
 That fro the tempest ay this woman kepte,  
 As wel whan she awoke as whan she slepte.

Wher might this woman mete and drinke have ?  
 Three yere and more, how lasteth hire vitaille ? 4919

Who fed the Egyptian Mary in the cave 4920  
 Or in desert? no wight by Crist *sans faille*.  
 Five thousand folk it was as gret marvaille  
 With loves five and fishes two to fede :  
 God sent his foyson at hire grete nede.

She driveth forth into our Ocean  
 Thurghout our wide see, til at the last 4927  
 Under an hold, that nempnen I ne can,  
 Fer in Northumberlond, the wave hire cast,  
 And in the sand hire ship stiked so fast,  
 That thennes wolde it not in all a tide :  
 The wille of Crist was that she shulde abide:

The constable of the castle doun is fare  
 To seen this wrecke, and al the ship he sought,  
 And fond this wery woman ful of care; 4934  
 He fond also the tresour that she bfought :  
 In hire langage mercy she besought,  
 The lif out of hire body for to twinne,  
 Hire to deliver of wo that she was inne.

A maner Latin corrupt was hire speche,  
 But algate therby was she understonde.  
 The constable, whan him list no lenger seche,  
 This woful woman brought he to the londe. 4942

She kneleth doun, and thanketh Goddes sonde; 4943  
 But what she was, she wolde no man seye  
 For foule ne faire, though that she shulde deye.

She said, she was so mased in the see,  
 That she forgate hire minde, by hire trowth.  
 The constable hath of hir so gret pitee  
 And eke his wif, that they wepen for routh :  
 She was so diligent withouten slouth 4950  
 To serve and plesen everich in that place,  
 That all hire love, that loken in hire face.

The constable and dame Hermegild his wif  
 Were payenes, and that contree every wher ;  
 But Hermegild loved Custance as hire lif ;  
 And Custance hath so long sojourned ther  
 In orisons, with many a bitter tere, 4957  
 Til Jesu hath converted thurgh his grace  
 Dame Hermegild, constablesse of that place.

In all that lond no cristen dorste route ;  
 All cristen folk ben fled fro that contree  
 Thurgh payenes, that conquereden all aboute  
 The plages of the North by lond and see.  
 To Wales fled the cristianitee 4964

Of-olde Bretons, dwelling in this ile ; 4965  
 Ther was hir refuge for the mene while.

But yet n'ere cristen Bretons so exiled,  
 That ther n'ere som which in hir privitee  
 Honoured Crist, and hethen folk begiled ;  
 And neigh the castle swiche ther dwelten three :  
 That on of hem was blind, and might not see,  
 But it were with thilke eyen of his minde, 4972  
 With which men mowen see whan they ben blinde.

Bright was the sonne, as in that sommers day,  
 For which the constable and his wif also  
 And Custance, han ytake the righte way  
 Toward the see, a furlong way or two,  
 To plaien, and to romen to and fro ;  
 And in hir walk this blinde man they mette, 4979  
 Croked and olde, with eyen fast ysfllette.

In the name of Crist (cried this blinde Breton)  
 Dame Hermegild, yeve me my sight again.  
 This lady wexe afraied of that soun,  
 Lest that hire husband, shortly for to sain,  
 Wold hire for Jesu Cristes love have slain,  
 Til Custance made hire bold, and bad hire werche  
 The will of Crist, as doughter of holy cherche. 4987

The constable wexe abashed of that sight, 4988  
 And sayde; What amounteth all this fare?  
 Custance answerd; Sire, it is Cristes might,  
 That helpeth folk out of the fendes snare:  
 And so ferforth she gan our lay declare,  
 That she the constable, er that it were eve,  
 Converted, and on Crist made him beleve.

This constable was not lord of the place 4995  
 Of which I speke, ther as he Custance fond,  
 But kept it strongly many a winter space,  
 Under Alla, king of Northumberlond,  
 That was ful wise, and worthy of his hond  
 Againe the Scottes, as men may wel here;  
 But tourne I wol againe to my matere.

Sathan, that ever us waiteth to begile, 5002  
 Saw of Custance all hire perfectioun,  
 And cast anon how he might quite hire while,  
 And made a yonge knight, that dwelt in that toun,  
 Love hire so hote of foule affectioun,  
 That veraily him thought that he shuld spille,  
 But he of hire might ones han his wille.

He woeth hire, but it availeth nought,  
 She wolde do no sinne by no wey: 5010

And for despit, he compassed his thought 5011  
 To maken hire on shameful deth to dey.  
 He waiteth whan the constable is away,  
 And prively upon a night he crepte  
 In Hermegildes chambre while she slepte.

Wery, forwaked in hire orisons,  
 Slepeþ Custance, and Hermegilde also.  
 This knight, thurgh Sathanas temptations, 5018  
 All softely is to the bed ygo,  
 And cut the throte of Hermegilde atwo,  
 And layd the bloody knif by dame Custance,  
 And went his way, ther God yeve him mischance.

Sone after cometh this constable home again,  
 And eke Alla, that king was of that lond,  
 And saw his wife despitously yslain, 5025  
 For which ful oft he wept and wrong his hond;  
 And in the bed the bloody knif he fõnd  
 By dame Custance, alas! what might she say?  
 For veray wo hire wit was all away.

To king Alla was told all this mischance,  
 And eke the time, and wher, and in what wise,  
 That in a ship was fõnden this Custance,  
 As here before ye han herd me devise: 5033

The kinges herte of pitee gan agrise, 5034  
 Whan he saw so benigne a creature  
 Falle in disese and in misaventure.

For as the lamb toward his deth is brought,  
 So stant this innocent befor the king :  
 This false knight, that hath this treson wrought,  
 Bereth hire in hond that she hath don this thing :  
 But natheles ther was gret murmuring 5041  
 Among the peple, and sayn they cannot gesse  
 That she had don so gret a wickednesse.

For they han seen hire ever so vertuous,  
 And loving Hermegild right as hire lif :  
 Of this bare witesse everich in that hous,  
 Save he that Hermegild slow with his knif :  
 This gentil king hath caught a gret motif 5048  
 Of this witness, and thought he wold enquire  
 Deper in this cas, trouthe for to lere.

Alas ! Custance, thou hast no champion,  
 Ne fighten canst thou not, so wala wa !  
 But he that starf for our redemption,  
 And bond Sathan, and yet lith ther he lay,  
 So be thy stronge champion this day : 5055

For but if Crist on thee miracle kithe, 5056  
 Withouten gilt thou shalt be slaine as swithe.

She set hire doun on knees, and thus she sayde ;  
 Immortal God, that savedest Susanne  
 Fro false blame, and thou merciful mayde,  
 Mary I mene, doughter to seint Anne,  
 Beforn whos child angels singen Osanne,  
 If I be gilteles of this felonie, 5063  
 My socour be, or elles shal I die.

Have ye not seen somtime a pale face  
 (Among a prees) of him that hath ben lad  
 Toward his deth, wher as he geteth no grace,  
 And swiche a colour in his face hath had,  
 Men mighten know him that was so bestad,  
 Amonges all the faces in that route, 5070  
 So stant Custance, and loketh hire aboute.

O quenes living in prosperitee,  
 Duchesses, and ye ladies everich on,  
 Haveth som routhe on hire adversitee ;  
 An emperoures doughter stant aloné ;  
 She hath no wight to whom to make hire mone ;  
 O blood real, that stondest in this drede,  
 Fer ben thy frendes in thy grete nede. 5078



This Alla king hath swiche compassioun, 5079  
As gentil herte is fulfilled of pitee,  
That fro his eyen ran the water doun.  
Now hastily do fecche a book, quod he ;  
And if this knight wol sweren, how that she  
This woman slow, yet wol we us advise,  
Whom that we wol that shal ben our justice.

A Breton book, written with Evangiles, 5086  
Was fet, and on this book he swore anon  
She giltif was, and in the mene whiles  
An hond him smote upon the nekke bone,  
That doun he fell at ones as a stone :  
And both his eyen brost out of his face  
In sight of every body in that place.

A vois was herd, in general audience, 5093  
That sayd ; Thou hast desclandred gilteles  
The doughter of holy chirche in high presence ;  
Thus hast thou don, and yet hold I my pees.  
Of this mervaille agast was all the prees,  
As mased folk they stonden everich on  
For drede of wreche, save Custance alone.

Gret was the drede and eke the repentance  
Of hem that hadden wronge suspicion 5101

Upon this sely innocent Custance ; 5102  
 And for this miracle, in conclusion,  
 And by Custances mediation,  
 The king, and many another in that place,  
 Converted was, thanked be Cristes grace.

This false knight was slain for his untrouthe  
 By jugement of Alla hastily ;  
 And yet Custance had of his deth gret routhe ; 5109  
 And after this Jesus of his mercy  
 Made Alla wedden ful solempnely  
 This holy woman, that is so bright and shene,  
 And thus hath Crist ymade Custance a quene:

But who was woful (if I shal not lie)  
 Of this wedding but Donegild and no mo,  
 The kinges mother, ful of tyrannie ? 5116  
 Hire thoughte hire cursed herte brast atwo ;  
 She wolde not that hire sone had do so ;  
 Hire thoughte a despit, that he shulde take  
 So strange a creature unto his make.

Me list not of the chaf ne of the stre  
 Maken so long a tale, as of the corn.  
 What shulde I tellen of the realtee  
 Of this mariage, or which cours goth befor, 5124

Who bloweth in a trompe or in an horn? 5125  
 The fruit of every tale is for to say;  
 They ete and drinke, and dance, and sing, and play.

They gon to bed, as it was skill and right,  
 For though that wives ben ful holy thinges,  
 They mosten take in patience a night  
 Swiche maner necessaries, as ben plesinges  
 To folk than han ywedded hem with ringes, 5132  
 And lay a lite hiȝ holinesse aside  
 As for the time, it may no bet betide.

On hire hē gat a knave childe anon,  
 And to a bishop, and his constable eke.  
 He toke his wif to kepe, whan he is gon  
 To Scotland ward, his fomen for to seke.  
 Now faire Custance, that is so humble and meke,  
 So long is gon with childe til that still 5140  
 She halt hire chambre, abiding Cristes will.

The time is come, a knave child she bereȝ  
 Mauricius at the fontstone they him calle.  
 This constable doth forth come a messenger,  
 And wrote unto his king that cleped was Alle,  
 How that this blisful tiding is befalle, 5146

And other tidings spedeful for to say. 5147  
 He hath the lettre, and forth he goth his way.

This messenger, to don his avantage,  
 Unto the kinges mother rideth swithe,  
 And salueth hire ful faire in his langage.  
 Madame, quod he, ye may be glad and blithe,  
 And thanken God an hundred thousand sithe;  
 My lady-queene hath child, withouten doute, 5154  
 To joye and blisse of all this regne aboute.

Lo here the lettre seled of this thing,  
 That I most bere in all the hast. I may :  
 If ye wol ought unto your sone the king,  
 I am your servant bothe night and day.  
 Donegilde answerd, As now at this time nay ;  
 But here I wol all night thou take thy rest, 5161  
 To-morwe wol I say thee what me lest.

This messenger drank sadly ale and wine,  
 And stolen were his lettres prively  
 Out of his box, while he slept as a swine ;  
 And contrefeted was ful subtilly  
 Another lettre, wrought ful sinfully,  
 Unto the king directe of this matere  
 Fro his constable, as ye shal after here. 5169

'This lettre spake, the quene delivered was . . . 5170  
 Of so horrible a fendliche creature,  
 That in the castle non so hardy was  
 That any while dorste therein endure :  
 The mother was an elfe by aventure  
 Ycome, by charmes or by sorcerie,  
 And everich man hateth hire compaignie. 5176

Wo was this king whan he this lettre had sein,  
 But to no wight he told his sorwes sore,  
 But of his owen hand he wrote again ;  
 Welcome the sonde of Crist for evermore  
 To me, that am now lerned in this lore :  
 Lord, welcome be thy lust and thy plesance,  
 My lust I put all in thyn ordinance.

Kepeth this child, al be it foule or faire, 5184  
 And eke my wif, unto min home coming :  
 'Crist whan him list may senden me an heire,  
 More agreable than this to my liking.  
 This lettre he seled, prively weping,  
 Which to the messenger was taken sone,  
 And forth he goth, ther is no more to done.

O messenger, fulfilled of dronkenesse,  
 Strong is thy breth, thy limmes faltren ay, 5192

And thou bewreiest alle secrenesse ; 5193  
 Thy mind is lorne, thou janglest as a jay ;  
 Thy face is tourned in a new array ;  
 Ther dronkenesse regneth in any route,  
 Ther is no conseil hid withöuten doute.

O Donegild, I ne have non English digne  
 Unto thy malice, and thy tirannie :  
 And therefore to the fende I thee resigne, 5200  
 Let him enditen of thy traitorie.  
 Fy mannish, fy ; o nay by God I lie ;  
 Fy fendliche spirit, for I dare wel telle,  
 Though thou here walke, thy spirit is in helle.

This messenger cometh fro the king again,  
 And at the kinges modres court he light,  
 And she was of this messenger ful fayn, 5207  
 And plesed him in all that ever she might.  
 He dranke, and wel his girdel underpight ;  
 He slepeth, and he snoreth in his gise  
 All night, until the sonne gan arise.

Eft were his lettres stolen everich on,  
 And contrefeted lettres in this wise.  
 The king commanded his constable anon  
 Up peine of hanging and of high jewise, 5215

That he ne shulde soffren in no wise  
 Custance within his regne for to abide  
 Three daies, and a quarter of a tide ;

But in the same ship as he hire fond,  
 Hire and hire yonge sone, and all hire gere  
 He shulde put, and croude hire fro the lond,  
 And charge hire, that she never eft come there.  
 O my Custance, wel may thy ghost have fere, 5223  
 And sleping in thy dreame ben in penance,  
 Whan Donegild cast all this ordinance.

This messenger on morwe whan he awoke,  
 Unto the castel halt the nexte way ;  
 And to the constable he the lettre toke ;  
 And whan that he this pitous lettre sey,  
 Ful oft he sayd alas, and wala wa ; 5230  
 Lord Crist, quod he, how may this world endure ?  
 So ful of sinne is many a creature.

O mighty God, if that it be thy will,  
 Sin thou art rightful juge, how may it be  
 That thou wolt soffren innocence to spill,  
 And wicked folk regne in prosperitee ?  
 A good Custance, alas ! so wo is me, 5237

That I mote be thy turmentour, or dey 5238  
 On shames deth, ther is non other wey.

Wepen both yong and old in al that place,  
 Whan that the king this cursed lettre sent :  
 And Custance with a dedly pale face  
 The fourthe day toward the ship she went :  
 But natheles she taketh in good entent  
 The will of Crist, and kneling on the strond 5245  
 She sayde, Lord, ay welcome be thy sond.

He that me kepte fro the false blame,  
 While I was in the lond amonges you,  
 He can me kepe fro harme and eke fro shame  
 In the salt see, although I se not how :  
 As strong as ever he was, he is yet now,  
 In him trust I, and in his mother dere, 5252  
 That is to me my sail and eke my stere.

Hire litel child lay weping in hire arm,  
 And kneling pitously to him she said,  
 Pees, litel sone, I wol do thee no harm :  
 With that hire couverchief of hire hed she braid,  
 And over his litel eyen she it laid,  
 And in hire arme she lulleth it ful fast,  
 And into the heven hire eyen up she cast. 5260



Mother, quod she, and mayden bright Marie, 5264 .  
 Soth is, that thurgh womannes eggement .  
 Mankind was lorne, and damned ay to die,  
 For which thy child was on a crois yrent :  
 Thy blisful eyen saw all his turment,  
 Than is ther no comparison betwene  
 Thy wo, and any wo man may sustene.

Thou saw thy child yslain before thin eyen, 5268  
 And yet now liveth my litel child parfay :  
 Now, lady bright, to whom all woful crien,  
 Thou glory of womanhed, thou faire may,  
 Thou haven of refute, bright sterre of day,  
 Rew on my child, that of thy gentillesse  
 Rewest on every rewful in distresse.

O litel child, alas ! what is thy gilt, 5275  
 That never wroughtest sinne as yet parde ?  
 Why wol thin harde father have thee spilt ?  
 O mercy, dere constable, (quod she)  
 As let my litel child dwell here with thee :  
 And if thou darst not saven him fro blame,  
 So kisse him ones in his fadres name.

Therwith she loketh backward to the lond,  
 And saide ; Farewel, housbond routheles ! . 5288

And up she rist, and walketh doun the strond 5284  
 Toward the ship, hire foloweth all the prees :  
 And ever, she praieth hire child to hold his pees,  
 And taketh hire leve, and with an holy entent  
 She blesseth hire, and into the ship she went.

Vitailed was the ship, it is no drede,  
 Habundantly for hire a ful long space :  
 And other necessaries that shuld nede 5291  
 She had ynow, heried be Goddes grace :  
 For wind and wether, almighty God purchase,  
 And bring hire home, I can no better say,  
 But in the see she driveth forth hire way.

Alla the king cometh home sone after this  
 Unto his castel, of the which I told,  
 And asketh wher his wif and his child is ; 5298  
 The constable gan about his herte cold,  
 And plainly all the matere he him told .  
 As ye han herd, I can tell it no better,  
 And shewed the king his sele and his letter ;

And sayde ; Lord, as ye commanded me  
 Up peine of deth, so have I don certain.  
 This messenger turmented was, til he  
 Moste beknowe, and tellen plat and plain, 5306

Fro night to night in what place he had lain : 5307  
 And thus by wit and subtil enquiring  
 Imagined was by whom this harm gan spring.

The hand was known that the lettre wrote,  
 And all the venime of this cursed dede ;  
 But in what wise, certainly I n'ot.  
 The effect is this, that Alla out of drede  
 His moder slew, that moun men plainly rede, 5314  
 For that she traitour was to hire ligeance :  
 Thus endeth this old Donegild with meschance.

The sorwe that this Alla night and day  
 Maketh for his wif and for his child also,  
 Ther is no tonge that it tellen may.  
 But now wol I agen to Custance go,  
 That fleteth in the see in peine and wo 5321  
 Five yere and more, as liked Cristes sonde,  
 Or that hire ship approched to the londe.

Under an hethen castel at the last,  
 (Of which the name in my text I not find)  
 Custance and eke hire child the see up cast.  
 Almighty God, that saved all mankind,  
 Have on Custance and on hire child som mind, 5328

That fallen is in hethen hond eftsonē 5329  
 In point to spill, as I shal tell you sone.

Down fro the castel cometh ther many a wight  
 To gauren on this ship, and on Custance :  
 But shortly fro the castel on a night,  
 The lordes steward (God yeve him meschance)  
 A theef, that had reneyed ōur creance,  
 Came into the ship alone, and said, he wolde 5336  
 Hire lemman be, whether she wolde or n'olde.

Wo was this wretched woman tho begon,  
 Hire childe cried, and she cried pitously :  
 But blisful Mary halpe hire right anon,  
 For with hire strogling wel and mightily  
 The theef fell over bord al sodenly,  
 And in the see he drenched for vengeance, 5343  
 And thus hath Crist unwemmed kept Custance.

O foule lust of luxurie, lo thin ende,  
 Nat only that thou faintest mannes mind,  
 But veraily thou wolt his body shende.  
 Th'ende of thy werk, or of thy lustes blind,  
 Is complaining : how many may men find,  
 That not for werk somtime, but for th'entent  
 To don this sinne, ben other slain or shent. 5351

How may this weke woman han the strength 5352  
 Hire to defend again this renegate?

O Goliass, unmesurable of length,  
 How mighte David maken thee so mate?  
 So yonge, and of armure so desolate,  
 How dorst he loke upon thy dredful face?  
 Wel may men seen it was but Goddes grace.

Who yaf Judith corage or hardinesse  
 To sleen him Holofernes in his tent, 5359  
 And to deliver out of wretchednesse  
 The peple of God? I say for this entent,  
 That right as God spirit of vigour sent  
 To hem, and saved hem out of meschance,  
 So sent he might and vigour to Custance.

Forth goth hire ship thurghout the narwe mouth  
 Of Jubaltare and Septe, driving alway, 5367  
 Somtime West, and sometime North and South,  
 And sometime Est, ful many a wery day:  
 Til Cristes moder (blessed be she ay)  
 Hath shapen thurgh hire endeles goodnesse  
 To make an end of all hire hevinesse.

Now let us stint of Custance but a throw,  
 And speke we of the Romane emperour, 5371

That out of Surrie hath by lettres knowe 5375  
 The slaughter of cristen folk, and dishonour  
 Don to his doughter by a false traitour,  
 I mene the cursed wicked Soudannesse,  
 That at the fest let sleen both more and lesse.

For which this emperour hath sent anon  
 His senatour, with real ordinance,  
 And other lordes, God wote, many on, 5382  
 On Surriens to taken high vengeance :  
 They brennen, sleen, and bring hem to meschance  
 Ful many a day : but shortly this is th'ende,  
 Homward to Rome they shapen hem to wende.

This senatour repaireth with victorie  
 To Rome ward, sayling ful really,  
 And met the ship driving, as saith the storie, 5389  
 In which Custance sitteth ful pitously :  
 Nothing ne knew he what she was, ne why  
 She was in swiche array, ne she wil sey  
 Of hire estat, though that she shulde dey.

He bringeth hire to Rome, and to his wif  
 He yaf hire, and hire yonge sone also :  
 And with the senatour she lad hire lif.  
 Thus can our lady bringen out of wo 5399

Woful Custance, and many another mo : 5398  
 And longe time dwelled she in that place,  
 In holy werkes ever, as was hire grace.

The senatoures wif hire aunte was,  
 But for all that she knew hire never the more :  
 I wol no longer tarien in this cas,  
 But to king Alla, which I spake of yore,  
 That for his wif wepeth and siketh sore, 5405  
 I wol returne, and let I wol Custance  
 Under the senatoures governance.

King Alla, which that had his moder slain,  
 Upon a day fell in swiche repentance,  
 That if I shortly tellen shal and plain,  
 To Rome he cometh to receive his penance,  
 And putte him in the popes ordinance 5412  
 In high and low, and Jesu Crist besought,  
 Foryeve his wicked werkes that he had wrought.

The fame anon thurghout the toun is born,  
 How Alla king shal come on pilgrimage,  
 By herbergeours that wenten him befor,  
 For which the senatour, as was usage,  
 Rode him againe, and many of his linage, 5419

As wel to shewen his high magnificence, 5420  
 As to don any king a reverence..

Gret chere doth this noble senatour  
 To king Alla, and he to him also ;  
 Everich of hem doth other gret honour ;  
 And so befell, that in a day or two  
 This senatour is to king Alla go  
 To fest, and shortly, if I shal not lie, 5427  
 Custances sone went in his compaignie.

Som men wold sain at requeste of Cūstance  
 This senatour hath lad this child to feste :  
 I may not tellen every circumstance,  
 Be as be may, ther was he at the leste :  
 But soth is this, that at his mothers heste  
 Beforn Alla, during the metes space, 5434  
 The child stood, loking in the kinges face.

This Alla king hath of this child gret wonder,  
 And to the senatour he said anon,  
 Whos is that faire child that stondesth yonder ?  
 I no't, quod he, by God and by Seint John ;  
 A moder he hath, but fader hath he non,  
 That I of wote : but shortly in a stound .  
 He told Alla how that this child was found. 5442



But God wot, quod this senatour also, 5443  
 So vertuous a liver in all my lif  
 Ne saw I never, as she, ne herd of mo  
 Of worldly woman, maiden, widewe or wif :  
 I dare wel sayn hire hadde lever a knif  
 Thurghout hire brest, than ben a woman wikke,  
 Ther is no man coude bring hire to that prikke.

Now was this child as like unto Custance 5450  
 As possible is a creature to be :  
 This Alla hath the face in remembrance  
 Of dame Custance, and theron mused he,  
 If that the childes moder were aught she  
 That is his wif, and prively he sighte,  
 And sped him fro the table that he mighte.

Parfay, thought he, fantome is in min hed. 5457  
 I ought to deme of skilful jugement,  
 That in the salte see my wif is ded.  
 And afterward he made his argument ;  
 What wot I, if that Crist have hider sent  
 My wif by see, as wel as he hire lent  
 To my contree, fro thennes that she went ?

And after noon home with the senatour  
 Goth Alla, for to see this wonder chance. 5465

This senatour doth Alla gret honour, 5466  
 And hastily he sent after Custance :  
 But trusteth wel, hire luste not to dance.  
 Whan that she wiste wherfore was that sonde,  
 Unnethe upon hire feet she mighte stonde.

Whan Alla saw his wif, faire he hire grette,  
 And wept, that it was routhē for to see,  
 For at the firste look he on hire sette 5473  
 He knew wel veraily that it was she :  
 And she for sorwe, as domb stant as a tree :  
 So was hire herte shette in hire distresse,  
 Whan she remembered his unkindnesse.

Twies she swouneth in his owen sight,  
 He wepeth and him excuseth pitously :  
 Now God, quod he, and all his halwes bright 5480  
 So wisly on my soule as have mercy,  
 That of youre harme as gilteles am I,  
 As is Maurice my sone, so like your face,  
 Elles the fend me fetche out of this place.

Long was the sobbing and the bitter peine,  
 Or that hir woful hertes mighten cese,  
 Gret was the pitee for to here hem pleine,  
 Thurgh whiche pleintes gan hir wo encrease. 5488

I pray you all my labour to relese, 5489  
 I may not tell hir wo until to-morwe,  
 I am so wery for to speke of sorwe.

But finally, whan that the soth is wist,  
 That Alla gilteles was of hire wo,  
 I trow an hundred times han they kist,  
 And swiche a blisse is ther betwix hem two,  
 That save the joye that lasteth evermo, 5496  
 Ther is non like, that any creature  
 Hath seen or shal, while that the world may dure.

Tho praied she hire husbond mekely  
 In releef of hire longe pitous pine,  
 That he wold pray hire fader specially,  
 That of his magestee he wold encline  
 To vouchesauf som day with him to dine : 5503  
 She praied him eke, he shulde by no way  
 Unto hire fader no word of hire say.

Som men wold sayn, how that the child Maurice  
 Doth this message until this emperour :  
 But as I gesse, Alla was not so nice,  
 To him that is so souveraine of honour,  
 As he that is of cristen folk the flour, 5510

Send any child, but it is bet to deme 5511  
 He went himself, and so it may wel seme.

This emperour hath granted gentilly  
 To come to dinner, as he him besoughte :  
 And wel rede I, he loked besily  
 Upon this child, and on his doughter thought.  
 Alla goth to his inne, and as him ought  
 Arraied for this feste in every wise, 5518  
 As ferforth as his conning may suffice.

The morwe came, and Alla gan him dresse,  
 And eke his wif, this emperour to mete :  
 And forth they ride in joye and in gladnesse,  
 And whan she saw hire fader in the strete,  
 She light adoun and falleth him to fete.  
 Fader, quod she, your yonge child Custance 5525  
 Is now ful clene out of your remembrance.

I am your doughter, your Custance, quod she,  
 That whilom ye han sent into Surrie ;  
 It am I, fader, that in the salte see  
 Was put alone, and dampned for to die.  
 Now, goode fader, I you mercy crie,  
 Send me no more into non hethenesse,  
 But thanketh my lord here of his kindenesse. 5533

Who can the pitous joye tellen all 5534  
 Betwix hem thre, sin they ben thus ymette?  
 But of my tale make an ende I shal,  
 The day goth fast, I wol no longer lette.  
 Thise glade folk to dinner ben ysette,  
 In joy and blisse at mete I let hem dwell,  
 A thousand fold wel more than I can tell.

This child Maurice was sithen emperour 5541  
 Made by the pope, and lived cristenly,  
 To Cristes chirche did he gret honour:  
 But I let all his storie passen by,  
 Of Custance is my tale specially,  
 In the olde Romane gestes men may find  
 Maurices lif, I bere it not in mind.

This king Alla, whan he his time sey, 5548  
 With his Custance, his holy wif so swete,  
 To Englund ben they come the righte wey,  
 Ther as they livè in-joye and in quiete.  
 But litel while it lasteth I you hete,  
 Joye of this world for time wol not abide,  
 Fro day to night it changeth as the tide.

Who lived ever in swiche delite o day,  
 That him ne meved other conscience, 5556

Or ire, or talent, or som kin affray, 5557  
 Envie, or pride, or passion, or offence?  
 I ne say but for this end this sentence,  
 That litel while in joye or in plesance  
 Lasteth the blisse of Alla with Custance.

For deth, that taketh of hie and low his rente,  
 Whan passed was a yere, even as I gesse,  
 Out of this world this king Alla he hente, 5564  
 For whom Custance hath ful gret hevinesse.  
 Now let us praien God his soule blesse :  
 And dame Custance, finally to say,  
 Toward the toun of Rome goth hire way.

To Rome is come this holy creature,  
 And findeth ther hire frendes hole and sound :  
 Now is she scaped all hire aventure : 5571  
 And whan that she hire fader hath yfound,  
 Down on hire knees falleth she to ground,  
 Weping for tendernesse in herte blifhe  
 She herieth God an hundred thousand sithe.

In vertue and in holy almesse dede  
 They liven alle, and never asonder wende ;  
 Till deth departeth hem, this lif they lede :  
 And fareth now wel, my tale is at an ende. 5579

Now, Jesu Crist, that of his might may sende 5580  
 Joye after wo, governe us in his grace,  
 And kepe us alle that ben in this place.

## THE WIF OF BATHES PROLOGUE.

EXPERIENCE, though non auctoritee  
 Were in this world, is right ynough for me  
 To speke of wo that is in mariage : 5585  
 For, lordings, sin I twelf yere was of age,  
 (Thanked be God that is eterne on live)  
 Husbondes at chirche dore have I had five,  
 (If I so often might han wedded be)  
 And all were worthy men in hir degree.

But me was told, not longe time agon is,  
 That sithen Crist ne went never but onis  
 To wedding, in the Cane of Galilee, 5593  
 That by that ilke ensample taught he me,  
 That I ne shulde wedded be but ones.  
 Lo, herke eke, which a sharpe word for the nones,  
 Beside a welle Jesu, God and man,  
 Spake in represe of the Samaritan :  
 Thou hast yhadde five husbonds, sayde he ;  
 And thilke man, that now hath wedded thee,  
 Is not thyn husbond : thus said he certain ;  
 What that he ment therby, I can not sain. 5602

But that I aske, why that the fifthe man 5603  
 Was non husbond to the Samaritan?  
 How many might she have in mariage?  
 Yet herd' I never tellen in min age  
 Upon this noumbre diffinitioún;  
 Men may devine, and glosen up and doun.

But wel I wot, expresse withouten lie  
 God bad us for to wex and multiplie;  
 That gentil text can I wel understand. 5611  
 Eke wel I wot, he sayd, that min husbond  
 Shuld leve fader and moder, and take to me;  
 But of no noumbre mention made he,  
 Of bigamie or of octogamie;  
 Why shuld men than speke of it vilanie?

Lo here the wise king Dan Salomon,  
 I trow he hadde wives mo than on,  
 (As wolde God it leful were to me 5619  
 To be refreshed half so oft as he)  
 Which a gift of God had he for alle his wives?  
 No man hath swiche, that in this world on live is.  
 God wot, this noble king, as to my witte,  
 The firste night had many a mery fitte  
 With eche of hem, so wel was him on live.  
 Blessed be God that I have wedded five,  
 Welcome the sixthe whan that ever he shall.  
 For sith I wol not kepe me chaste in all, 5628



Whan min husbond is fro the world ygon, 5639  
 Som cristen man shal wedden me anon.  
 For than the apostle saith, that I am fre  
 To wedde, a' goddes half, wher it liketh me.  
 He saith, that to be wedded is no sinne ;  
 Better is to be wedded than to brinne.

What rekketh me though folk say vilanie  
 Of shrewed Lamech, and his bigamie ?

I wot wel Abraham was an holy man, 5637  
 And Jacob eke, as fer as ever I can,  
 And eche of hem had wives mo than two,  
 And many another holy man also.

Wher can ye seen in any maner age  
 That highe God defended mariage  
 By expresse word ? I pray you telleth me,  
 Or wher commanded he virginitee ?

I wot as wel as ye, it is no drede, 5645  
 The apostle, whan he spake of maidenhede,  
 He said, that precept therof had he non :  
 Men may conseille a woman to ben on,  
 But conseilling is no commandement ;  
 He put it in our owen jugement.

For hadde God commanded maidenhede,  
 Than had he dampned wedding out of drede ;  
 And certes, if ther were no sede ysowe,  
 Virginitee than wherof shuld it growe ? 5654

Poule dorste not commanden at the lest 5655  
 A thing, of which his maister yaf non hest.  
 The dart is sette up for virginitee,  
 Catch who so may, who renneth best let see.  
 But this word is not take of every wight,  
 But ther as God wol yeve it of his might.  
 I wot wel that the apostle was a maid,  
 But natheles, though that he wrote and said,  
 He wold that every wight were swiche as he, 5663  
 All n'is but conseil to virginitee.  
 And for to ben a wif he yaf me leve,  
 Of indulgence, so n'is it non repreve  
 To wedden me, if that my make die,  
 Withoute exception of bigamie ;  
 All were it good no woman for to touche,  
 (He ment as in his bed or in his couche)  
 For peril is both fire and tow to assemble ; 5671  
 Ye know what this ensample may resemble.  
 This is all and som, he held virginitee  
 More parfit than wedding in freeltee :  
 (Freeltee clepe I, but if that he and she  
 Wold lede hir lives all in chastitee)  
 I graunt it wel, I have of non envie,  
 Who maidenhed pferre to bigamie ;  
 It liketh hem to be clene in body and gost :  
 Of min estat I wol not maken bost. 5680

For wel ye know, a lord in his houshold 5681  
 Ne hath nat every vessell all of gold :  
 Som ben of tree ; and don hir lord service.  
 God clepeth folk to him in sondry wise,  
 And everich hath of God a propre gift,  
 Som this, som that, as that him liketh shift.

Virginitee is gret perfection,  
 And cōtinance eke with devotion :  
 But Crist, that of perfection is welle, 5697  
 Ne bade not every wight he shulde go selle  
 All that he had, and yeve it to the poure,  
 And in swiche wise folow him and his lore :  
 He spake to hem that wold live parfitly,  
 And, lordings, (by your leve) that am nat I ;  
 I wol bestow the flour of all myn age  
 In th' actes and the fruit of mariage.

Tell me also, to what conclusion 5697  
 Were membres made of generation,  
 And of so parfit wise a wight ywrought ?  
 Trusteth me wel, they were nat made for nought.  
 Glose who so wol, and say bothe up and doun,  
 That they were made for purgatioun  
 Of urine, and of other thinges smale,  
 And eke to know a female from a male :  
 And for non other cause ? say ye no ?  
 The experience wot wel it is not so. 5706

So that the clerkes be not with me wroth, 5707  
 I say this, that they maked ben for both,  
 This is to sayn, for office, and for ese  
 Of engendrure, ther we not God displese.

Why shuld men elles in hir bookes sette,  
 That man shal yelden to his wif hire dette ?  
 Now wherwith shuld he make his payement,  
 If he ne used his sely instrument ?

Than were they made upon a creature 5715  
 To purge urine, and eke for engendrure.

But I say not that every wight is hold,  
 That hath swiche harneis as I to you told,  
 To gon and usen hem in engendrure ;  
 Than shuld men take of chastitee no cure.  
 Crist was a maide, and shapen as a man,  
 And many a seint, sith that this world began,  
 Yet lived they ever in parfite chastitee. 5723

I n'ill envie with no virginitee.

Let hem with bred of pure whete be fed,  
 And let us wives eten barly bred.

And yet with barly bred, Mark tellen can,  
 Our Lord Jesu refreshed many a man.

In swiche estat as God hath cleped us,

I wol persever; I n'am not precious,

In wifhode wol I use min instrument

As frely as my maker hath it sent. 5732

If I be dangerous God yeve me sorwe, 5733  
 Min husbond shal it have both even and morwe,  
 Whan that him list come forth and pay his dette.  
 An husbond wol I have, I wol not lette,  
 Which shal be both my dettour and my thrall,  
 And have his tribulation withall  
 Upon his flesh, while that I am his wif.  
 I have the power during all my lif  
 Upon his propre body, and nat he ; 5741  
 Right thus the apostle told it unto me,  
 And bad our husbonds for to love us wel ;  
 All this sentence me liketh every del.

Up stert the pardonere, and that anon ;  
 Now, dame, quod he, by God and by Seint John,  
 Ye ben a noble prechour in this cas.

I was about to wed a wif, alas !  
 What? shuld I bie it on my flesh so dere? 5749  
 Yet had I lever wed no wif to-yere.

Abide, quod she, my tale is not begonne.  
 Nay, thou shalt drinken of another tonne  
 Er that I go, shal savour worse than ale.  
 And whan that I have told thee forth my tale  
 Of tribulation in mariage,  
 Of which I am expert in all min age,  
 (This is to sayn, myself hath ben the whippe)  
 Than maiest thou chesen wheder thou wolt sippe 5758

Of thilke tonne, that I shal abroche.  
 Beware of it, er thou to neigh approche.  
 For I shal tell ensamples mo than ten :  
 Who so that n'ill beware by other men  
 By him shal other men corrected be :  
 These same wordes writeth Ptholomee,  
 Rede in his Almageste, and take it there.

5759

Dame, I wold pray you, if your will it were,  
 Sayde this pardonere, as ye began,  
 Tell forth your tale, and spareth for no man,  
 And techeth us yonge men of your practike.

5767

Gladly, quod she, sin that it may you like.  
 But that I pray to all this compaignie,  
 If that I speke after my fantasie,  
 As taketh not a greefe of that I say,  
 For min entente is not but for to play.

Now, sires, than wol I tell you forth my tale.  
 As ever mote I drinken win or ale

5776

I shal say soth, the husbondes that I had  
 As three of hem were good, and two were bad.  
 The three were goode men and riche and olde.  
 Unethes mighten they the statute holde,  
 In which that they were bounden unto me.  
 Ye wot wel what I mene of this parde.

As God me helpe, I laugh whan that I thinke,  
 How pitously a-night I made hem swinke,

5784

But by may fay, I tolde of it no store : 5785  
 They had me yeven hir lond and hir tresore,  
 Me neded not do lenger diligence  
 To win hir love, or don hem reverence.  
 They loved me so wel by God above,  
 That I ne tolde no deintee of hir love.  
 A wise woman wol besie hire ever in on  
 To geten hir love, ther as she hath non.  
 But sith I had hem holly in min hond,  
 And that they hadde yeven me all hir lond, 5798  
 What shuld I taken kepe hem for to plesse,  
 But it were for my profit, or min ese?  
 I set hem so a-werke by my fay,  
 That many a night they songen wala wa.  
 The bacon was not fet for hem, I trow,  
 That som men have in Essex at Donmow.  
 I governed hem so wel after my lawe, 5801  
 That eche of hem ful blisful was and fawe  
 To bringen me gay thinges fro the feyre.  
 They were ful glade whan I spake hem fayre,  
 For God it wot, I chidde hem spitously.  
 Now herkeneth how I bare me proprely.  
 Ye wise wives, that can understand,  
 Thus shul ye speke, and bere hem wrong on hond,  
 For half so boldely can ther no man  
 Sweren and lien as a woman can. 5810

(I say not this by wives that ben wise,  
But if it be whan they hem misavise.) 5811

A wise wif if that she can hire good,  
Shal beren hem on hond the cow is wood,  
And taken witnessse of hire owen mayd  
Of hir assent : but herkeneth how I sayd.

Sire olde kaynard, is this thin aray ?

Why is my neigheboures wif so gay ?

She is honoured over al wher she goth, 5819

I sit at home, I have no thrifty cloth.

What dost thou at my neigheboures hous ?

Is she so faire ? art thou so amorous ?

What rownest thou with our maide ? *benedicite,*

Sire olde lechour, let thy japes be.

And if I have a gossib, or a frend,

(Withouten gilt) thou chidest as a fend,

If that I walke or play unto his hous. 5827

Thou comest home as dronken as mous,

And prechest on thy benche; with evil pre

Thou sayst to me, it is a gret meschiefe

To wed a poure woman, for costage :

And if that she be riche of high parage,

Than sayst thou, that it is a tourmentrie

To soffre hire pride and hire melancolie.

And if that she be faire, thou veray knave,

Thou sayst that every holour wol hire have. 5836



She may no while in chastitee abide, 5837  
That is assailed upon every side.

Thou sayst som folk desire us for richesse,  
Som for our shape, and som for our fairnesse,  
And som, for she can oþer sing or dance,  
And som for gentillesse and daliance,  
Som for hire hondes and hire armes smale :  
Thus goth all to the devil by thy tale.

Thou sayst, men may not kepe a castel wal; 4845  
It may so long assailed be over al.

And if that she be foul, thou sayst, that she  
Coveteth every man that she may see ;  
For as a spaniel, she wol on him lepe,  
Til she may finden som man hire to chepe.  
Ne non so grey goos goth ther in the lake,  
(As sayst thou) that wol ben withoute a make.

And sayst, it is an hard thing for to welde 5853  
A thing, that no man wol his thanks, helde.

Thus sayst thou, loref, whan thou gost to bed,  
And that no wise man nedeth for to wed,  
Ne no man that entendeth unto heven.  
With wilde thonder dint and firy leven  
Mote thy welked nekke be to-broke.

Thou sayst, that dropping houses, and eke smoke,  
And chiding wives maken men to flee  
Out of hir owen hous; a, *benedicite*, 5862

What aileth swiche an old man for to chide? 5863

Thou sayst, we wives wol our vices hide,  
Til we be fast, and than we wol hem shewe.  
Wel may that be a proverbe of a shrewe.

Thou sayst, that oxen, asses, hors, and houndes,  
They ben assaied at diverse stoundes,

Basines, lavoures, or that men hem bie,  
Spones, stooles, and all swiche husbondrie,  
And so ben pottes, clothes, and aray, 5871

But folk of wives maken non assay,  
Til they ben wedded, olde dotard shrewe!  
And than, sayst thou, we wol our vices shewe.

Thou sayst also, that it displeseth me,  
But if that thou wolt preisen my beautee,  
And but thou pore, alway upon my face,  
And clepe me faire dame in every place;  
And but thou make a feste on thilke day 5879

That I was borne, and make me fresh and gay;  
And but thou do to my norice honour,  
And to my chamberere within my bour;  
And to my faders folk, and myn allies;  
Thus sayst thou, olde barel ful of lies.

And yet also of our prentis Jankin,  
For his crispe here, shining as gold so fin,  
And for he squiereth me both up and doun,  
Yet hast thou caught a false suspicion: 5888

I wol him nat, though thou were ded to-morwe. 5889

But tell me this, why hidest thou with sorwe

The keies of thy chest away fro me?

It is my good as wel as thin parde.

What, weneest thou make an idiot of our dame?

Now by that Lord that cleped is Seint Jame,

Thou shalt nat bothe, though that thou were wood,

Be maister of my body and of my good,

That on thou shalt forgo maugre thin eyen. 5897

1 What helpeth it of me to enquere and spien?

I trow thou woldest locke me in thy cheste.

Thou shuldest say, Fayr wif, go wher thee leste;

Take your disport; I wol nat leve no tales;

I know you for a trewe wif, dame Ales.

We love no man, that taketh kepe or charge

Wher that we gon, we wol be at our large.

Of alle men yblessed mote he be 5903

The wise astrologien Dan Ptholomee,

That sayth this proverbe in his Almageste:

Of alle men his wisdom is higheste;

That rekketh not who hath the world in hond.

By this proverbe thou shalt wel understand,

Have thou ynough, what thar thee rekke or care

How merily that other folkes fare?

For certes, olde dotard, by your leve,

Ye shullen have queint right ynough at eve. 5914

He is to gret a nigard that wol werne 6915  
 A man to light a candel at his lanterne ;  
 He shal have never the lesse light parde.  
 Have thou ynough, thee thar not plainen thee.

Thou sayst also, if that we make us gay  
 With clothing and with precious array,  
 That it is peril of our chastitee.

And yet, with sorwe, thou enforcest thee, 5922  
 And sayst thise wordes in the apostles name :  
 In habit made with chastitee and shame  
 Ye women shul appareile you, (quod he)  
 And nat in tressed here, and gay perrie,  
 As perles, ne with gold, ne clothes riche.

After thy text, ne after thy rubriche  
 I wol not work as mochel as a gnat.

Thou sayst also, I walke out like a cat ;  
 For who so wolde senge the cattes skin, 5931  
 Than wol the cat wel dwellen in hire in ;  
 And if the cattes skin be sleke and gay,  
 She wol nat dwellen in hous half a day,  
 But forth she wol, or any day be dawed,  
 To shew hire skin, and gon a caterwawed.  
 This is to say, if I be gay, sire shrewe,  
 I wol renne out, my borel for to shewe.  
 Sire olde fool, what helpeth thee to spien ?  
 Though thou pray Argus, with his hundred eyen 5940

To be my wardecorps, as he can best, 5931  
 In faith he shał not kepe me but me lest :  
 Yet coude I make his berd, so mote I the.

Thou sayest eke, that thier ben thinges three,  
 Which thinges gretly troubleh all this erthe,  
 And that no wight ne may endure the ferthe :  
 O lefe sire shrewe, Jesu short thy lif.

Yet prechest thou, and sayst, an hateful wif  
 Yrekened is for on of thise meschances. 5939  
 Be ther non other maner resemblances  
 That ye may liken your parables to,  
 But if a sely wif be on of tho ?

Thou likenest eke womans love to helle,  
 To barrein lond, ther water may not dwelle.

Thou likenest it also to wilde fire ;  
 The more it brenneth, the more it hath desire  
 To consume every thing, that brent wol be. 5957

Thou sayest, right as wormes shende a tre,  
 Right so a wif destroyeth hire husbond ;  
 This knowen they that ben to wives bond.

Lordings, right thus, as ye han understand,  
 Bare I stify min old husbondes on hond,  
 That thus they saiden in hir dronkenesse ;  
 And all was false, but as I toke witnessse  
 On Jankin, and upon my nece also.  
 O Lord, the peine I did hem, and the wo, 5966

Ful gilteles, by Goddes swete pine ; 5967  
 For as an hors, I coude bite and whine ;  
 I coude plain, and I was in the gilt,  
 Or elles offentime I had ben spilt.  
 Who so first cometh to the mill, first grind ;  
 I plained first, so was our werre ystint.  
 They were ful glad to excusen hem ful blive  
 Of thing, the which they never agilt hir live.  
 Of wretches wold I beren hem on hond, 5975  
 Witan that for sike unnethes might they stond,  
 Yet tikeled I his herte for that he  
 Wend that I had of him so gret chiertee :  
 I swore that all my walking out by night  
 Was for to espie wenchis that he dight :  
 Under that colour had I many a mirth :  
 For all swiche wit is yeven us in our birth ;  
 Deceite, weping, spinning, God hath yeven 5983  
 To women kindly, while that they may liven.  
 And thus of o thing I may avauten me,  
 At th'ende I had the beter in eche degre,  
 By sleight or force, or by som maner thing,  
 As by continual murmur or grutching,  
 Namely a-bed, ther hadden they meschance,  
 Ther wold I chide, and don hem no plesance :  
 I wold no lenger in the bed abide,  
 If that I felt his arme over my side, 5992

Til he had made his raunson unto me, 5993  
 Than wold I soffre him do his nicetee.  
 And therefore every man this tale I tell,  
 Winne who so may, for all is for to sell:  
 With empty hond men may no haukes lure,  
 For winning wold I all his lust endure,  
 And maken me a feined appetit,  
 And yet in bacon had I never delit:  
 That maketh me that ever I wold hem chide. 6001  
 For though the pope had sitten hem beside,  
 I wold not spare hem at hir owen bord,  
 For by my trouthe I quitte hem word for word.  
 As helpe me veray God omnipotent,  
 Tho I right now shuld make my testament,  
 I ne owe hem not a word, that it n'is quit,  
 I brought it so abouten by my wit,  
 That they must yeve it up, as for the best, 6009  
 Or elles had we never ben in rest.  
 For though he loked as a wood leon,  
 Yet shuld he faille of his conclusion.

Than wold I say, now, goode lese, take kepe.  
 How mekely loketh Wilkin oure shepe!  
 Come ner my spouse, and let me ba thy cheke.  
 Ye shulden be al patient and meke,  
 And han a swete spiced conscience,  
 Sith ye so preche of Jobes patience. 6018

Suffreth alway, sin ye so wel can preche,  
 And but ye do, certain we shal you teche  
 That it is faire to han a wif in pees.

6019

On of us two moste bowen douteles :  
 And, sith a man is more resonable  
 Than woman is, ye mosten ben suffrable.  
 What aileth you to grutchen thus and gronē?  
 Is it for ye wold have my queint alone?

Why take it all : lo, have it every del.

6027

Peter, I shrew you but ye love it wel.

For if I wolde sell my *belle chose*,

I coude walke as fresshe as is a rose,

But I wol kepe it for your owen toth.

Ye be to blame, by God, I say you soth.

Swiche maner wordes hadden we on hond.

Now wol I speken of my fourthe husband:

My fourthe husbonde was a revellour,

6035

This is to sayn, he had a paramour,

And I was yonge and ful of ragerie,

Stibborne and strong, and joly as a pie.

Tho coude I dancen to an harpe smale,

And sing ywis as any nightingale,

Whan I had dronke a draught of swete wine.

Metellius, the foule cherle, the swine,

That with a staf beraft his wif hire lif

For she drank wine, though I had ben his wif,

6044



Ne shuld he not have daunted me fro drinke : 6045

And after wine of Venus most I thinke.

For al so siker as cold engendreth hayl,

A likerous mouth most han a likerous tayl.

In woman vinolent is no defence,

This knowen lechours by experience.

But, lord Crist, whan that it remembreth me

Upon my youth, and on my jolitee,

It tikleth me about myn herte-rote. 6055.

Unto this day it doth myn herte bote,

That I have had my world as in my time.

But age, alas ! that all wol envenime,

Hath me beraft my beautee and my pith :

Let go, farewel, the devil go therwith.

The flour is gon, ther n'is no more to tell,

The bren, as I best may, now moste I sell.

But yet to be right mery wol I fond. 6061

Now forth to tellen of my fourthe husband.

I say, I had in herte gret despit,

That he of any other had delit ;

But he was quit by God and by Seint Joce :

I made him of the same wood a croce,

Not of my body in no foule manere,

But certainly I made folk swicke chere,

That in his owen grese I made him frie

For anger, and for veray jalousie. 6070

By God, in erth I was his purgatorie, 6071  
 For which I hope his soule be in glorie.  
 For, God it wote, he sate ful oft and songe,  
 Whan that his sho ful bitterly him wronge.  
 Ther was no wight, save God and he, that wiste.  
 In many a wise how sore that I him twiste.  
 He died whan I came fro Jerusalem,  
 And lith ygrave under the rode-beem :  
 All is his tombe not so curious 6079  
 As was the sepulcre of him Darius,  
 Which that Appelles wrought so sotelly.  
 It is but wast to bury hem preciously.  
 Let him farewell, God give his soule rest,  
 He is now in his grave and in his chest.  
 Now of my fifthe husbonde wol I telle :  
 God let his soule never come in helle.  
 And yet was he to me the moste shrèw, 6087  
 That fele I on my ribbes all by rew,  
 And ever shal, unto min ending day.  
 But in our bed he was so fresh and gay,  
 And therwithall he coude so wel me glose,  
 Whan that he wolde han my *belle chose*,  
 That, though he had me bet on every bon,  
 He coude win agen my love anon.  
 I trow, I love him the bet, for he  
 Was of his love so dangerous to me. 6096

We wimmen han, if that I shal not lie,  
 In this matere a queinte fantasie.  
 Waite, what thing we may nat lightly haue,  
 Therafter wol we cry all day and crave:  
 Forbede us thing, and that desiren we;  
 Prese on us fast, and thanne wol we flee.  
 With danger uttren we all our chaffare;  
 Gret prees at market maketh dere ware,  
 And to gret chepe is holden at litel prise;  
 This knoweth every woman that is wise.

6097

6105<sup>r</sup> 1

My fifthe husbonde, God his soule blesse,  
 Which that I toke for love and no'richesse,  
 He somtime was a clerk of Oxenforde,  
 And had left scole; and went at home at bordé  
 With my gossib, dwelling in oure toun:  
 God have hire soule, hire name was Alisoun.  
 She knew my herte and all my privetee,  
 Bet than our parish preest, so mote I the.  
 To hire bewried I my conseil all;  
 For had my husbond pissed on a wall,  
 Or don a thing that shuld have cost his lif,  
 To hire, and to another worthy wif,  
 And to my nece, which that I loved wel;  
 I wold have told his conseil every del.  
 And so I did ful often, God it wote,  
 That made his face ful often red and hote,

6113

6122

For veray shame, and blamed himself, for he 6123  
Had told to me so gret a priuete.

And so befell that ones in a Lent,  
(So often times I to my gossib went,  
For ever yet I loved to be gay,  
And for to walke in March, April, and May  
From hous to hous, to heren sondry tales)  
That Jankin clerk, and my gossib dame Ales,  
And I myself, into the feldes went. 6130

Myn husbond was at London all that Lent;  
I had the better leiser for to pleie,  
And for to see, and eke for to be seie  
Of lusty folk; what wist I wher my grace  
Was shapen for to be, or in what place?  
Therefore made I my visitations  
To vigilies, and to processions,  
To prechings eke, and to thise pilgrimages, 6139  
To playes of miracles, and mariages,  
And wered upon my gay skarlet gites.  
These wormes, ne these mothes, ne these mites  
Upon my paraille frett hem never a del,  
And wost thou why? for they were used wel.

Now wol I tellen forth what happed me:  
I say, that in the feldes walked we,  
Till trewely we had swiche daliance  
This clerk and I, that of my purveance 6148

I spake to him, and said him how that he, 6149  
 If I were widewe, shulde wedden me.  
 For certainly, I say for no bobance,  
 Yet was I never without purveance  
 Of mariage, ne of other thinges eke :  
 I hold a mouses wit not worth a leke,  
 That hath but on hole for to sterten to,  
 And if that faille, than is all ydo.

I bare him on hond he had enchanted me ; 6157  
 (My dame taughte me that subtiltee)  
 And eke I sayd, I mette of him all night,  
 He wold han slain me, as I lay upright,  
 And all my bed was full of veray blood ;  
 But yet I hope that ye shuln do me good :  
 For blood betokeneth gold, as me was taught.  
 And al was false, I dremed of him right naught,  
 But as I folwed ay my dames lore, 6165  
 As wel of that as of other thinges more.

But now, sire, let me see, what shall I saine ?  
 A ha, by God I have my tale again.  
 Whan that my fourthe husbonde was on bere,  
 I wept algate and made a sory chere,  
 As wives moten, for it is the usage  
 And with my coverchefe covered my visage ;  
 But, for that I was purveyed of a make,  
 I wept but smal, and that I undertake. 6174

To chirche was myn husband born a-morwe 6175  
 With neighebores that for him maden sorwe,  
 And Jankinoure clerk was on of tho :  
 As helpe me God, whan that I saw him go .  
 After the bere, me thought he had a paire  
 Of legges and of feet, so clene and faire,  
 That all my herte I yave unto his hold.  
 He was, I trow, a twenty winter old,  
 And I was fourty, if I shal say soth, 6183  
 But yet I had alway a coltes toth.  
 Gat-tothed I was, and that became me wele,  
 I had the print of Seinte Venus sele.  
 As helpe me God, I was a lusty on,  
 And faire, and riche, and yonge, and wel begon :  
 And trewely, as min husbandes tolden me,  
 I had the beste queint that mighte be :  
 For certes I am all venerian 6191  
 In feling, and my herte is matcian :  
 Venus me yave my lust and likerousnesse,  
 And Mars yave me my sturdy hardinesse.  
 Min ascendent was Taure, and Mars therinne :  
 Alas, alas, that ever love was sinne !  
 I folwed ay min inclination  
 By vertue of my constellation :  
 That made me that I coude nat withdraw  
 My chambre of Venus from a good felaw. 6200

Yet have I Martes merke upon my face, 6201  
 And also in another privee place.

For God so wisly be my salvation,

I loved never by no discretion,

But ever folwed min appetit,

All were he shorte, longe, blake, or white,

I toke no kepe, so that he liked me,

How poure he was, ne eke of what degree.

What shuld I saye? but at the monthes ende 6209

This joly clerk Jankin, that was so hende,

Hath wedded me with gret solempnitee,

And to him yave I all the lond and fee,

That ever was me yeven therbefore :

But afterward repented me ful sore.

He n'olde suffre nothing of my list.

By God he smote me ones with his fist,

For that I rent out of his book a lefe, 6217

That of the stroke myn'ere wex al defe.

Stibborne I was; as is a leonesse,

And of my tonge a veray jangleresse,

And walke I wold, as I had don befor,

Fro hous to hous, although he had it sworn :

For which he oftentimes wolde preche,

And me of olde Romaine gestes teche.

How he Sulpitius Gallus left his wif,

And hire forsoke for terme of all his lif, 6226

Not but for open-headed he hire say  
 Loking out at his dore upon a day.

6227

Another Romaine told he me by name,  
 That, for his wif was at a sommer game  
 Without his weting, he forſeke hire eke.

And than wold he upon his Bible seke  
 That ilke proverbe of Ecclesiaste,  
 Wher he commandeth, and forbedeth faste,  
 Man shal not suffer his wif go roule aboute. 6235

Than wold he say right thus withouten doute,  
 Who so that bildeth his hous all of salwes,  
 And pricketh his blind hors over the falwes,  
 And suffereth his wif to go seken halwes,  
 Is worthy to be honged on the galwes.

But all for nought, I sette not an hawe  
 Of his proverbes, ne of his olde sawe,  
 Ne I wold not of him corrected be,  
 I hate hem that my vices tellen me,  
 And so do mo of us (God wote) than I.  
 This made him wood with me all utterly;  
 I n'olde not forbere him in no cas.

6243

Now wol I say you soth by Seint Thomas,  
 Why that I rent out of his book a lefe,  
 For which he smote me, so that I was defe.

He had a book, that gladly night and day  
 For his disport he wolde it rede alway,

6252



He cleped it Valerie, and Theophrast,  
 And with that book he lough alway ful fast.  
 And eke ther was a clerk somtime at Rome,  
 A cardinal, that highte Seint Jerome,  
 That made a book again Jovinian,  
 Which book was ther, and eke Tertullian,  
 Crisippus, Trotula, and Helowis,  
 That was abbesse not fer fro Paris;  
 And eke the paraboles of Salomon,  
 Ovides art, and bourdes many on;  
 And alle these were bonden in o volume.  
 And every night and day was his custume  
 (Whan he had leiser and vacation  
 From other worldly occupation)  
 To reden in this book of wikked wives.  
 He knew of hem mo legendes and mo lives,  
 Than ben of goode wives in the Bible.

6661

6269

For trusteth wel, it is an impossible,  
 That any clerk wol speken good of wives,  
 (But if it be of holy seintes lives)  
 Ne of non oþer woman never the mo,  
 Who peinted the leon, telleth me, who?  
 By God, if wimmen hadden written stories,  
 As clerkes han, within his oratories,  
 They wold have writ of men more wikkednesse,  
 Than all the merke of Adam may redresse.

6278

The children of Mercury and of Venus 6279  
 Ben in hir werking ful contrarious.  
 Mercury loveth wisdom and science,  
 And Venus loveth riot and dispence.  
 And for hir divers disposition;  
 Eche falleth in others exaltation.

As thus, God wote, Mercury is desolat  
 In Pisces, wher Venus is exaltat,  
 And Venus falleth wher Mercury is reised. 6287  
 Therefore no woman of no clerk is preised.  
 The clerk whan he is old, and may nought do  
 Of Venus werkes not worth his old sho,  
 Than siteth he doun, and writeth in his dotage,  
 That wimmen cannot kepe hir mariage.

But now to purpos, why I tolde thee,  
 That I was besen for a book parde.

Upon a night Jankin, that was our sire, 6295  
 Red on his book, as he sate by the fire,  
 Of Eva first, that for hire wikkednesse  
 Was all mankinde brought to wretchednesse,  
 For which that Jesu Crist himself was slain,  
 That bought us with his herte-blood again.

Lo here expresse of wimmen may ye find,  
 That woman was the losse of all mankind.

Tho redde he me how Sampson lost his heres  
 Sleeping, his lemman kitte hem with hire sheres, 6304

Thurgh whiche treson lost he both his eyen. 6305  
 ' Tho' redde he me, if that I shal not lien,  
 Of Hercules, and of his Deianire,  
 That caused him to set himself a-fire.

Nothing forgot he the care and the wo,  
 That Socrates had with his wives two ;  
 How Xantippa cast pisse upon his hed.  
 This selyman sat still, as he were ded,  
 He wiped his hed, no more dorst he sain, 6313  
 "But, er the thonder stint ther cometh rain.

Of Pasiphae, that was the quene of Crete,  
 For shrewednesse him thought the tale swete.  
 Fie, speke no more (it is a grisely thing)  
 Of hire horrible lust and hire liking:

Of Clitemnestra for hire lecherie  
 That falsely made hire husband for to die,  
 He redde it with ful good devotion. 6321

He told me eke, for what occasion  
 Amphiorax at Thebes lost his lif:  
 My husband had a legend of his wif  
 Eriphile, that for an ouche of gold  
 Hath prively unto the Grekes told,  
 Wher that hire husband hidde him in a place,  
 For which he had at Thebes sory grace.

Of Lima told he me, and of Lucie:  
 They bothe made hir husbandes for to die, 6330

That on for love, that other was for hate. 6331  
 Lima hire husbond on an even late  
 Enpoysoned hath, for that shē was his fo :  
 Lùcia likerouȝ loved hire husbond so,  
 That for he shuld alway upon hire thinke,  
 She yave him swiche a maner love-drinke,  
 That he was ded er it were by the morwe :  
 And thus algates husbondes hadden sorwe.

Than told he me, how on Latumeus 6339  
 Complained to his felaw Arius,  
 That in his gardin growed swiche a tree,  
 On which he said how that his wives three  
 Honged himself for hertes despitous.  
 O leve brother, quod this Arius,  
 Yeve me a plant of thilke blessed tree,  
 And in my gardin planted shal it be.

Of later date of wives hath he redde, 6347  
 That som han slain hir husbonds in hir bedde,  
 And let hir lechour dight hem all the night,  
 While that the corps lay in the flore upright :  
 And som han driven nailes in hir brain,  
 While that they slepe, and thus they han hem slain :  
 Som han hem yeven poyson in hir drink :  
 He spake more harm than herte may bethinke.

And therwithall he knew of mo proverbes,  
 Than in this world their growen gras or herbes. 6356

Bet is (quod he) thin habitation 6357  
 Be with a leon, or a foule dragon,  
 Than with a woman using for to chide.

Bet is (quod he) high in the roof abide,  
 Than with an angry woman doun in the hous,  
 They ben so wikked and contrarious :  
 They haten, that hir husbonds loven ay.

He sayd, a woman cast hire shame away,  
 Whan she cast of hire smock; and forthermo, 6365  
 A faire woman, but she be chast also,  
 Is like a gold ring in a sowes nose.

Who coude wene, or who coude suppose  
 The wo that in min herte was, and the pine?  
 And whan I saw he-n'olde never fine  
 To reden on this cursed book all night,  
 Al sodenly three leves have I plight  
 Out of his book, right as he redde, and eke 6373  
 I with my fist so toke him on the cheke,  
 That in oure fire he fell bakward adoun.  
 And he up sterte, as doth a wood leoun,  
 And with his fist he smote me on the hed,  
 That in the flore I lay as I were ded.  
 And whan he saw how stille that I lay,  
 He was agast, and wold have fled away,  
 Til at the last out of my swough I brayde.  
 O, hast thou slain me, false thief? I sayde, 6382

And for my lond thus hast thou mordred me? 6383

Er I be ded, yet wol I kissen thee.

And nere he came, and kneled faire adoun,

And sayde; dere suster Alisoun,

As helpe me God I shal thee never smite:

That I have don it is thyself to wite,

Forgyve it me, and that I thee beseke.

And yet eftsones I hitte him on the cheke,

And sayde; theef, thus much am I awreke. 6391

Now wol I die, I may no longer speke.

But at the last, with mochel care and wo

We fell accorded by ourselven two:

He yaf me all the bridel in min hond

To han the governance of hous and lond,

And of his tonge, and of his hond also,

And made him brenne his book anon right tho.

And whan that I had gotten unto me 6399

By maistrie all the soverainetee,

And that he sayd, min owen trewe wif,

Do as thee list, the terme of all thy lif,

Kepe thin honour, and kepe eke min estat;

After that day we never had debat.

God helpe me so, I was to him as kinde,

As any wif fro Denmark unto Inde,

And al so trewe, and so was he to me:

I pray to God that sit in majestee

So blisse his soule, for his mercy dere. 6409

Now wol I say my tale if ye wol here.

The frere lough whan he had herd all this :  
Now dame, quod he, so have I joye and blis,  
This is a long preamble of a tale.

And whan the Sompnour herd the frere gale,  
Lo (quod this Sompnour) Goddes armes two, :  
A frere wol entermete him evermo :  
Lo, goode men, a fie and eke a frere 6417

Wol fall in every dish and eke matere.  
What spekest thou of preambulatioun ?  
What? amble or trot ; or pees, or go sit down :  
Thou letttest our disport in this matere.

Ye, wolt thou so; Sire Sompnour? quod the frere ;  
Now by my faith I shal, er that I go,  
Tell of a Sompnour swiche a tale or two, .  
That all the folk shal laughen in this place. 6425

Now elles, frere, I wol beshrewe thy face,  
(Quod this Sompnour) and I beshrewe me,  
But if I telle tales two or three  
Of freres, or I come to Sidenborne,  
That I shal make thin herte for to morne :  
For wel I wot thy patience is gon.

Our hoste cried ; pees, and that anon ;  
And sayde ; let the woman tale hire tale.  
Ye fare as folk that dronken ben of ale. 6434

Do, dame, tell forth your tale, and that is best. 6435

Al redy, sire, quod she, right as you lest,  
If I have licence of this worthy frere.

Yes, dame, quod he, tell forth, and I wol here.

### THE WIF OF BATHES TALE.

In olde dayes of the king Artour,  
Of which that Bretons speken gret honour, 6440  
All was this lond fulfilled of faerie ;  
The Elf-quene, with hire joly compaignie,  
Danced ful oft in many a grene mede.  
This was the old opinion as I rede ;  
I speke of many hundred yeres ago ;  
But now can no man see non elves mo,  
For now the grete charitee and prayeres  
Of limitoures and other holy freres, 6448  
That serchen every land and every streme,  
As thikke as motes in the sonne-beme,  
Blissing halles, chambres, kichenes, and boures,  
Citees and burghes, castles highe and toures,  
Thropes and bernes, shepenes and dairies,  
This maketh that ther ben no faeries :  
For ther as wont to walken was an elf,  
Ther walketh now the limitour himself,  
In undermeles and in morweninges, 6457



And sayth his Matines and his holy thinges, 6458  
As he goth in his limitatioun.

Women may now go safely up and down,  
In every bush, and under every tree,  
Ther is non other incubus but he,  
And he ne will don hem no dishonour.

And so befell it, that this king Artour  
Had in his hous a lusty bacheler,  
That on a day came riding fro river : 6466

And happed, that, alone as she was borne,  
He saw a maiden walking him beforne,  
Of which maid he anon, maugre hire hed,  
By veray force beraft hire maidenhed :  
For which oppression was swiche clamour,  
And swiche pursuite unto the king Artour,  
That damned was this knight for to be ded  
By cours of lawe, and shuld have lost his hed, 6474  
(Paraventure swiche was the statute tho,)

But that the quene and other ladies mo  
So longe praieden the king of grace,  
Til he his lif him granted in the place,  
And yaf him to the quene, all at hire will  
To chese whether she yold him save or spill.

The quene thanketh the king with al hire might ;  
And after this thus spake she to the knight,  
Whan that she saw hire time upon a day. 6483

Thou standest yet (quod she) in swiche array, 6484  
 That of thy lif, yet hast thou no seuretee;  
 I grant thee lif, if thou canst tellen me,  
 What thing is it that women most desiren :  
 Beware, and kepe thy nekke-bone from yren.  
 And if thou canst not tell it me anon,  
 Yet wol I yeve thee leve for to gon  
 A twelvemonth and a day, to seke and lere  
 An answer suffisant in this matere. 6492  
 And seuretee wol I have, or that thou pace,  
 Thy body for to yelden in this place.

Wo was the knight, and sorwefully he siketh ;  
 But what ? he may not don all as him liketh.  
 And at the last he chese him for to wende,  
 And come agen right at the yeres ende  
 With swiche answer, as God wold him purvay :  
 And taketh his leve, and wendeth forth his way.

He seketh every hous and every place, 6501  
 Wher as he hopeth for to finden grace,  
 To lernen what thing women loven moste :  
 But he ne coude-ariven in no coste,  
 Wher as he mighte find in this matere  
 Two creatures according in fere.  
 Som saiden, women loven best richesse,  
 Som saiden honour, som saiden jolinesse,  
 Som riche array, som saiden lust a-bedde, 6509

And oft time to be widewe and to be wedde. 6510

Some saiden, that we ben in herte most esed  
Whan that we ben yflatered and ypreised.

He goth ful nigh the sothe, I wol not lie ;

A man shal winne us best with flaterie ;

And with attendaunce, and with besinesse

Ben we ylimed bothe more and lesse.

And som men saiden, that we loven best

For to be free, and do right as us lest, 6518

And that no man repreve us of our vice,

But say that we ben wise, and nothing nice.

For trewely ther n'is non of us all,

If any wight wol claw us on the gall,

That we n'ill kike, for that he saith us soth :

Assay, and he shal find it, that so doth.

For be we never so vicious withinne,

We wol be holden wise and clene of sinne. 6526

And som saiden, that gret delit han we

For to be holden stable and eke secre,

And in o purpos stedfastly to dwell,

And not bewreyen thing that men us tell.

But that tale is not worth a rake-stele.

Parde we women connen nothing hele,

Witnesse on Mida ; wol ye here the tale ?

Ovide, amonges other thinges smale,

Said, Mida had under his longe heres 6535

Growing upon his hed two asses eres ; 6536  
 The whiche vice he hid, as he beste might,  
 Ful subtilly from every mannes sight,  
 That, save his wif, ther wist of it no mo ;  
 He loved hire most, and trusted hire also ;  
 He praied hire, that to no creature  
 She n'olde tellen of his disfigure. \*

• She swore him, nay, for all the world to winne,  
 She n'olde do that vilanie, ne sinne, 6544  
 To make hire husbond han so foule a name :  
 She n'olde not tell it for hire owen shame.  
 But natheles hire thoughte that she dide,  
 That she so longe shuld a conseil hide ;  
 Hire thought it swal so sore aboute hire herte,  
 That nedely som word hire must asterte ;  
 And sith she dorst nat telle it to no man,  
 Doun to a mareis faste by she ran, 6552  
 Til she came ther, hire herte was a-fire :  
 And as a bitore bumbleth in the mire,  
 She laid hire mouth unto the water doun.  
 Bewrey me not, thou water, with thy soun,  
 Quod she, to thee I tell it, and no mo,  
 Min husbond hath long asses eres two,  
 Now is min herte all hole, now is it out,  
 I might no lenger kepe it out of dout.  
 Here may ye see, though we a time abide, 6561

Yet out it-moste, we can no conseil hide. 6562  
 The remenant of the tale, if ye wol here,  
 Redeth Ovide; and ther ye may it lere.

This knight, of which my tale is specially,  
 Whan that he saw he might not come therby,  
 (This is to sayn, what women loven most)  
 Within his brest ful sorweful was his gost.  
 But home he goth, he mighte not sojourne,  
 The day was come, that homward must he turne.  
 And in his way, it happed him to ride 6571  
 In all his care, under a forest side,  
 Wheras he saw upon a dance go  
 Of ladies foure and twenty, and yet mo.  
 Toward this ilke dance he drow ful yerne,  
 In hope that he som wisdom shulde lerne ;  
 But certainly, er he came fully there,  
 Yvanished was this dance, he n'iste not wher ;  
 No creature saw he that bare lif, 6579  
 Save on the grene he saw sitting a wif,  
 A fouler wight ther may no man devise.  
 Againe this knight this-olde wif gan arise,  
 And said : sire knight, here forth ne lith no way.  
 Tell me what that ye seken by your fay.  
 Paraventure it may the better be :  
 Thise olde folk con mochel thing, quod she.

My leve mother, quod this knight, certain, 6587

I n'am but ded, but if that I can sain, 6588  
 What thing it is that women most desire,  
 Coude ye me wisse, I wold quite wel your hire.  
 Plight me thy trouthe here in myn hond, quod she,  
 The nexte thing that I requere of thee  
 Thou shalt it do, if it be in thy might,  
 And I wol tell it you or it be night.

Have here my trouthe, quod the knight, I graunte.

Thanne, quod she, I dare me wel avaunte, 6596  
 Thy lif is sauf, for I wol stond therby,  
 Upon my lif the quene wol say as I :  
 Let see, which is the proudest of hem alle,  
 That wereth on a kerchef or a calle,  
 That dare sayn nay of that I shal you teche.  
 Let us go forth withouten lenger speche.

Tho rowned she a pistel in his ere,  
 And bad him to be glad, and have no fere. 6604

Whan they ben comen to the court, this knight  
 Said, he had hold his day, as he had hight,  
 And redy was his answe, as he saide.  
 Ful many a noble wif, and many a maide,  
 And many a widewe, for that they ben wise,  
 (The quene hireself sitting as a justice)  
 Assembled ben, his answer for to here,  
 And afterward this knight was bode appere.

To every wight commanded was silence, 6613

And that the knight shuld tell in audience, 6614  
 What thing that worldly women lowen best.  
 This knight ne stood not still, as doth a best,  
 But to this question anon answerd  
 With manly vois, that all the court it herd.

My liege lady, generally, quod he,  
 Women desiren tō han soverainetee,  
 As well over hir husband as hir love,  
 And for to ben in maistrie him above. 6622  
 This is your most desire, though ye me kille,  
 Doth as you list, I am here at your wille.

In all the court ne was ther wif ne maide,  
 Ne widewe, that contraried that he saide,  
 But said, he was worthy to han his lif.

And with that word up stert this olde wif,  
 Which that the knight saw sitting on the grene.  
 Mercy, quod she, my soveraine lady quene, 6630  
 Er that your court depart, as doth me right.  
 I taughte this answer unto this knight,  
 For which he plighte me his trouthe there,  
 The firste thing I wold of him requere,  
 He wold it do, if it lay in his might.  
 Before this court than pray I thee, sire knight,  
 Quod she, that thou me take unto thy wif,  
 For wel thou wost, that I have kept thy lif:  
 If I say false, say nay upon thy fay. 6639

This knight answered, alas and wala wa ! 6640  
 I wot right wel that swiche was my behest  
 For Goddes love as chese a new request :  
 Take all my good, and let my body go.

Nay than, quod she, I shrewe us bothe two.  
 For though that I be olde, foule, and pore,  
 I n'olde for all the metal ne the ore,  
 That under erthe is grave, or lith above,  
 But if thy wif I were and eke thy love. 6648

My love ? quod he, nay, my dampnation.  
 Alas ! that any of my nation  
 Shuld ever so foule disparaged be.  
 But all for nought ; the end is this, that he  
 Constrained was, he nedes must hire wed,  
 And taketh this olde wif, and goth to bed.

Now wolden som men sayn paraventure,  
 That for my negligence I do no cure 6656  
 To tellen you the joye and all the array,  
 That at the feste was that ilke day.

To which thing shortly answeren I shal :  
 I say ther was no joye ne feste at al,  
 Ther n'as but hevynesse and mochel sorwe :  
 For prively he wedded hire on the morwe,  
 And all day after hid him as an oule,  
 So wo was him, his wif loked so foule. 6664

Gret was the wo the knight had in his thought



Whan he was with his wif a-bed ybrought, 6666  
 He walweth, and he turneth to and fro.

This olde wif lay smiling evermo,  
 And said : O dere husbond, *benedicite*,  
 Fareth every knight thus with his wif as ye ?  
 Is this the lawe of king Artoures hous ?  
 Is every knight of his thus dangerous ?

I am your owen love, and eke your wif,  
 I am she, which that saved hath your lif, 6674  
 And certes yet did I you never unright.

Why fare ye thus with me this firste night ?  
 Ye faren like a man had lost his wit.

What is my gilt ? for Goddes love tell it,  
 And it shal ben amended, if I may.

Amended ? quod this knight, alas ! nay, nay,  
 It wol not ben amended never mo ;

Thou art so lothly, and so olde also, 6682  
 And therto comen of so low a kind,  
 That litel wonder is though I walwe and wind ;  
 So wolde God, min herte wolde brest.

Is this, quod she, the cause of your unrest ?  
 Ye certainly, quod he, no wonder is.

Now sire, quod she, I coude amend all this,  
 If that me list, er it were dayes three,  
 So wel ye mighten bere you unto me.

But for ye speken of swiche gentillesse, 6691

As is descended out of old richesse,  
That therefore shullen ye be gentilmen;  
Swiche arrogance n'is not worth an hen.

669c

Loke who that is most vertuous alway,  
Prive and apert, and most entendeth ay  
To do the gentil dedes that he can,  
And take him for the grettest gentilman.  
Crist wol we claime of him our gentillesse,  
Not of our elders for hir old richesse.  
For though they yeve us all hir heritage,  
For which we claime to ben of high parage,  
Yet may they not bequethen, for no thing,  
To non of us, hir vertuous living,  
That made hem gentilmen called to be,  
And bade us folwen hem in swiche degree.

6700

Wel can the wise poet of Florence,  
That highte Dant, speken of this sentence :  
Lo, in swiche maner rime is Dantes tale.

6708

Ful selde up riseth by his branches smale  
Prowesse of man, for God of his goodnesse  
Wol that we claime of him our gentillesse :  
For of our elders may we nothing claime  
But temporel thing, that man may hurt and maimen.

Eke every wight wot this as wel as I,  
If gentillesse were planted naturelly  
Unto a certain linage doun the line,

6717

Prive and apert, than wold they never fine 6718  
 To don of gentillesse the faire office,  
 They mighten do no vilanie or vice.

Take fire and bere it into the derkest hous  
 Betwix this and the mount of Caucasus,  
 And let mēn shette the dores, and go thenne,  
 Yet wol the fire as faire lie and brenne  
 As twenty thousand men might it behold ;  
 His office naturel ay wol it hold, 6726  
 Up peril of my lif, til that it die.

Here may ye see wel, how that genterie  
 Is not annexed to possession,  
 Sith folk ne don hir operation  
 Alway, as doth the fire, lo, in his kind.  
 For God it wot, men moun ful often find  
 A lordes sone do shame and vilanie.  
 And he that wol han pris of his genterie, 6734  
 For he was boren of a gentil hous,  
 And had his elders noble and vertuous,  
 And n'ill himselven do no gentil dedes,  
 Ne folwe his gentil auncestrie, that ded is,  
 He n'is not gentil, be he duk or erl ;  
 For vilains sinful dedes make a cherl.  
 For gentillesse n'is but the renomee  
 Of thin auncestres, for hir high bountee,  
 Which is a strange thing to thy persone : 6743

Thy gentillesse cometh fro God alone.  
 Than cometh our veray gentillesse of grace,  
 It was no thing bequethed us with our place.

6744

Thinketh how noble, as saith Valerius,  
 Was thilke Tullius Hostilius,  
 That out of povertē rose to high noblesse.  
 Redeth Senek, and redeth eke Boece,  
 Ther shall ye seen expresse, that it no dred is,  
 That he is gentil that doth gentil dedis.  
 And therefore, leve husband, I thus conclude,  
 Al be it that min auncestres weren rude,  
 Yet may the highe God, and so hope I,  
 Granten me grace to liven vertuously :  
 Than am I gentil, whan that I beginne.  
 To liven vertuously, and weiven sinne.

6752

And ther as ye of povertē me repreve,  
 The highe God, on whom that we beleve,  
 In wilful povertē chese to lede his lif :  
 And certes, every man, maiden, or wif  
 May understand, that Jesus heven king  
 Ne wold not chese a vicious living.

6760

Glad povertē is an honest thing certain.  
 This wol Senek and other clerkes sain.  
 Who so that halt him paid of his povertē,  
 I hold him rich, al had he not a sherte.  
 He that coveiteth is a poure wight,

6769

For he wold han that is not in his might.  
 But he that nought hath, ne coveiteth to have,  
 Is riche, although ye hold him but a knave.  
 Veray poverte is sinne proprely.

6770

Juvenal saith of poverte merily :  
 The poure man whan he goth by the way,  
 Before the theves he may sing and play.  
 Poverte is hateful good ; and, as I gesse,  
 A ful gret bringer out of besinesse ;  
 A gret amender eke of sapience  
 To him, that taketh it in patience.  
 Poverte is this, although it seme elenge,  
 Possession that no wight wol challenge.  
 Poverte ful often, whan a man is low,  
 Maketh his God and eke himself to know :  
 Poverte a spectakel is, as thinketh me,  
 Thurgh which he may his veray frendes see.  
 And therefore, sire, sin that I you not greve,  
 Of my poverte no more me repreve.

6778

6786

Now, sire, of elde, that ye repreven me :  
 And certes, sire, though non auctoritee  
 Were in no book, ye gentiles of honour  
 Sain, that men shuld an olde wight honour,  
 And clepe him fader, for your gentillesse ;  
 And auctours shal I finden, as I gesse.

Now ther ye sain that I am foule and old,

6795

¶ Than drede ye not to ben a cokewold. 6796

For filthe, and elde also, so mote I the,  
Ben grete wardeins upon chastitee.  
But natheles, sin I know your delit,  
I shal fulfill your worldly appetit.

Chese now (quod she) on of these thinges twey,  
To han me foule and old til that I dey,  
And be to you a trewe humble wif,  
And never you displese in all my lif: 6804  
Or elles wol ye han me yonge and faire,  
And take your aventure of the repaire,  
That shal be to your hous because of me,  
Or in som other place it may wel be?  
Now chese yourselven whether that you liketh. 6808

This knight aviseth him, and sore siketh,  
But at the last he said in this manere;

My lady and my love, and wif so dere, 6812  
I put me in your wise governance,  
Cheseth yourself which may be most plesance  
And most honour to you and me also,  
I do no force the whether of the two:  
For as you liketh, it sufficeth me.

¶ Than have I got the maisterie, quod she,  
Sin I may chese and governe as me lest.  
Ye certes, wif, quod he, I hold it best.

Kisse me, quod she, ye be no lenger wrothe, 6821

For by my trowth I wol be to you bothe, 6822  
 This is to sayn, ye bothe faire and good.  
 I pray to God that I mote sterven wood,  
 But I to you be al so good and trewe,  
 As ever was wif, sin that the world was newe;  
 And but I be to-morwe as faire to seen,  
 As any lady, emperice, or quene,  
 That is betwix the Est and eke the West,  
 Doth with my lif and deth right as you lest. 6830  
 Cast up the curtein, loke how that it is.

And whan the knight saw veraily all this,  
 That she so faire was, and so yonge therto,  
 For joye he hent hire in his armes two:  
 His herte bathed in a bath of blisse,  
 A thousand time a-row he gan hire kisse:  
 And she obeyed him in every thing,  
 That mighte don him plesance or liking. 6838  
 And thus they live unto hir lives ende  
 In parfit joye, and Jesu Crist us sende  
 Husbondes meke and yonge, and fressh a-bed,  
 And grace to overlive hem that we wed.

And eke I pray Jesus to short hir lives,  
 That wol not be governed by hir wives.  
 And old and angry nigards of dispence,  
 God send hem sone a veray pestilence. 6846

## THE FRERES PROLOGUE.

THIS worthy limitour, this noble Frere, 6847.  
 He made alway a maner louring chere  
 Upon the Sompnour, but for honēstee  
 No vilains word as yet to him spake he:  
 But at the last he said unto the wif;  
 Dame, (quod he) God yeve you right good lif,  
 Ye have here touched, all so mote I the, 6853  
 In scole matere a ful gret difficultee.  
 Ye han said mochel thing right wel, I say:  
 But, dame, here as we riden by the way,  
 Us nedeth not to speken but of game;  
 And let auctoritees in Goddes name  
 To preching, and to scole eke of clergie.

But, if it like unto this compaignie, 6860  
 I wol you of a Sompnour tell a game;  
 Parde ye may wel knowen by the name,  
 That of a Sompnour may no good be said;  
 I pray that non of you be evil apaid;  
 A Sompnour is a renner up and doun  
 With mandements for fornicatioun,  
 And is ybete at every tounes ende.

Tho spake our hoste; A, sire, ye shuld ben hende  
 And curteis, as a man of your estat, 6869



In compaignie we wiln have no debat : 687b  
 Telleth your tale, and let the Sompnour be.  
 Nāy, quod the Sompnour, let him say by me  
 What so him list; whan it cometh to my lot,  
 By God I shal him quiten every grot.  
 I shal him tellen which a greȝ honour  
 It is to be a flatering limitour,  
 And eke of many another maner crime,  
 Which nedeth not rehersen at this time, 687b  
 And his office I shal hīm tell ywis.  
 Our hoste answered; pees, no more of this.  
 And afterward he said unto the Frere,  
 Tell forth your tale, min owen maister dere.

## THE FRERES TALE,

WHILOM ther was dwelling in my contree 688a  
 An archedeken, a man of high degree,  
 That boldely did execution  
 In punishing of fornication,  
 Of witchecraft, and eke of bauderie,  
 Of defamacion, and avouterie,  
 Of chirche-reves, and of testaments,  
 Of contracts, and of lack of sacraments,  
 Of usure, and of simonie also;  
 But certes lechours did he gretest wo; 689a

They shulden singen, if that they were hent; 6893  
 And smale titheres weren foule yshent,  
 If any personè wold upon hem plaine,  
 Ther might astert hem no pecunial peine.  
 For smale tithes, and smale offering,  
 He made the peple pitously to sing;  
 For er the bishop hent hem with his crook  
 They weren in the archedekens book;  
 Than had he thurgh his jurisdiction 6901  
 Power to don on hem correction.

He had a Sompnour redy to his hond,  
 A slier boy was non in Englelond;  
 For subtilly he had his espiaille,  
 That taught him wel wher it might ought availle;  
 He coude spare of lechours on or two,  
 To techen him to foure and twenty mo.  
 For though this Sompnour wood be as an hare, 6909  
 To tell his harlotrie I wol not spare,  
 For we ben out of hir correction,  
 They han of us no jurisdiction,  
 Ne never shul have, terme of all hir lives.

Peter, so ben the women of the stives,  
 Quod this Sompnour, yput out of our cure.

Pees, with mischance and with misaventure,  
 Our hoste said, and let him tell his tale.

Now telleth forth, and let the Sompnour gale, 6918

Ne spareth not, min owen maister dere.

This false theef, this Sompnour, quod the frere,  
 Had alway baudes redy to his hond,  
 As any hauke to lure in Englelond,  
 That told him all the secree that they knewe,  
 For hir acquaintance was not come of newe;  
 They weren his approvers prively.

He tooke himself a gret profit therby :

His maister knew not alway what he wan.

Withouten mandement, a lewed man

He coude sompne, up peine of Cristes curse,

And they were inly glad to fille his purse,

And maken him gret festes at the nale.

And right as Judas hadde purses smale,

And was a theef, right swiche a theef was he,

His master hadde but half his duetee.

He was (if I shal yeven him his laud)

A theef, and eke a Sompnour, and a baud:

He had eke wenches at his retenue,

That whether that sire Robert or sire Hue,

Or Jakke, or Rauf, or who so that it were

That lay by hem, they told it in his ere.

Thus was the wenche and he of on assent.

And he wold secche a feined mandement,

And sompne hem to the chapitre bothe two,

And pill the man, and let the wenche go.

Than wold he say; frend, I shal for thy sake 6945  
 Do strike thee out of bure lettres blake;  
 Thee thar no more as in this cas travaille;  
 I am thy frend ther I may thee auaile.  
 Certain he knew of briboures many mo,  
 Than possible is to tell in yeres two:  
 For in this world n'is dogge for the bowe,  
 That can an hurt dere from an hole yknowe,  
 Bet than this Sompnour knew a slie lechour, 6953  
 Or an avoutrer, or a paramour:  
 And for that was the fruit of all his rent,  
 Therefore on it he set all his entent.

And so befell, that ones on a day  
 This Sompnour, waiting ever on his pray,  
 Rode forth to sompne a widewe, an olde ribibe,  
 Feining a cause, for he wold han a bribe.  
 And happed that he saw befor him ride. 6961  
 A gay yeman under a forest side:  
 A bow he bare, and arwes bright and kene,  
 He had upon a courtepy of grene,  
 An hat upon his hed with frenges blake.

Sire, quod this Sompnour, haile and wel atake.

Welcome, quod he, and every good felaw;  
 Whider ridest thou under this grene shaw?  
 (Saide this yeman) wolt thou fer to-day?

This Sompnour him answerd, and saide, nay. 6970

Here faste by (quod he) is min, entent  
 To riden, for to reisen up a rent,  
 That longeth to my lordes duetee.

6971

A, art thou than a baillif? Ye, quod he.  
 (He dorste not for veray filth and shame  
 Say that he was a Sompnour, for the name.)

*De par dieux*, quod this yemañ, leve brother,  
 Thou art a baillif, and I am another.

I am unknowen, as in this contree.

6979

Of thin acquaintance I wol prayen thee,  
 And eke of brotherhed, if that thee list.  
 I have gold and silver lying in my chist;  
 If that thee hap to come in to our shire,  
 Al shal be thin, right as thou wolt desire.

*Grand mercy*, quod this Sompnour, by my faith.  
 Everich in others hond his trouthe laith,  
 For to be sworne brethren til they dey.  
 In daliaunce they riden forth and pley.

6987

This Sompnour, which that was as ful of jangles,  
 As ful of venime ben these wariangles,  
 And ever enquering upon every thing,  
 Brother, quod he, wher is now your dwelling,  
 Another day if that I shuld you seche?

This yemañ him answerd in softe speche;  
 Brother, quod he, fer in the North contree,  
 Wheras I hope sometime I shal thee see.

6996

Or we depart I shal thee so wel wisse, 6997  
 That of min hous ne shalt thou never misse.

Now brother, quod this Sompnour, I you pray,  
 Teche me, while that we riden by the way,  
 (Sith that ye ben a baillif as am I)  
 Som subtiltee, and tell me faithfully  
 In min office how I may moste winne.  
 And spareth not for conscience or for sinne,  
 But, as my brother, tell me how do ye. 7005

Now by my trouthe, brother min, said he,  
 As I shal tellen thee a faithful tale.  
 My wages ben ful streit and eke ful smale;  
 My lord is hard to me and dangerous,  
 And min office is ful laborious;  
 And therefore by extortion I leve,  
 Forsoth I take all that men wol me yeve.  
 Algates by sleighte or by violence 7013  
 Fro yere to yere I win all my dispenche;  
 I can no better tellen faithfully.

Now certes, (quod this Sompnour) so fare I;  
 I spare not to taken, God it wote,  
 But if it be to hevye or to hote.  
 What I may gete in conseil prively,  
 No maner conscience of that have I.  
 N'ere min extortion, I might not liven,  
 Ne of swiche japes wol I not be shriven. 7022

Stomak ne conscience know I non; 7023  
 I shrew these shrifte-faders everich on.  
 Wel be we met by God and by Seint Jame.  
 But leve brother, tell me than thy name,  
 Quod this Sompnour. Right in this mene while  
 This yeman gan a litel for to smile.

Brother, quod he, wolt thou that I thee telle?  
 I am a fend, my dwelling is in helle,  
 And here I ride about my pourchasing, 7031  
 To wote wher men wol give me any thing.  
 My pourchas is th'effect of all my rente.  
 Loke how thou ridest for the same entente  
 To winnen good, thou rekkest never how,  
 Right so fare I, for riden wol I now  
 Unto the worldes ende for a praye.

A, quod this Sompnour, *benedicite*, what say ye?  
 I wend ye were a yeman trewely. 7039  
 Ye have a mannes shape as wel as I.  
 Have ye than a figure determinat  
 In helle; ther ye ben in your estat?

Nay certainly, quod he, ther have we non,  
 But whan us liketh we can take us on,  
 Or elles make you wene that we ben shape  
 Somtime like a man, or like an ape;  
 Or like an angel can I ride or o;  
 It is no wonder thing though it be so, 7048

A lousy jogelour can deceiven thee, 7049  
 And parde yet can I more craft than he.

Why, quod the Sompnour, ride ye than or gon  
 In sondry shape, and not alway in on ?

For we, quod he, wol us swiche forme make,  
 As most is able our preye for to take.

What maketh you to han al this labour ?

Ful many a cause, leve sire Sompnour,  
 Saide this fend. But alle thing hath time ; 7057

The day is short, and it is passed prime,  
 And yet ne wan I nothing in this day ;  
 I wol entend to winning, if I may,

And not entend our thinges to declare :

For, brother min, thy wit is al to bare

To understand, although I told hem thee.

But for thou axest, why labouren we :

For sometime we be Goddes instruments, 7063

And menes to don his commandements,

Whan that him list, upon his creatures,

In divers actes and in divers figures :

Withouten him we have no might certain,

If that him list to stonden theragain.

And sometime at our praier han we leve,

Only the body, and not the soule to greve :

Witnesse on Job, whom that we diden wo.

And sometime han we might on bothe two, 7074



This is to sain, on soule and body eke. 7075

And somtime be we suffered for to seke  
Upon a man, and don his soule unreste  
And not his body, and all is for the beste.

Whan he withstandeth our temptation,  
It is a cause of his salvation,

Al be it that it was not our entente  
He shuld be sauf, but that we wold him hente.

And somtime be we servants unto man, 7083  
As to the archebishop Seint Dunstan,  
And to the apostle servant eke was I.

Yet tell me, quod this Sompnour, faithfully,  
Make ye you newe bodies thus alway

Of elements? The fend answered, nay :

Somtime we feine, and somtime we arise

• With dede bodies, in ful sondry wise,  
And speke as renably, and faire, and wel, 7091

As to the Phitonesse did Samuel :

And yet wol som men say it was not he.

I do no force of your divinitee.

But o thing warne I thee, I wol not jape,

Thou wolt algates wete how we be shape :

Thou shalt hereafterward, my brother dere,

Come, wher thee nedeth not of me to lere,

For thou shalt by thin owen experience

Conne in a chaiere rede of this sentence, 7100

Bet than Virgile, while he was on live, 7101  
 Or Dant also. Now let us riden blive,  
 Fer I wol holden compaignie with thee,  
 Til it be so that thou forsake me.

Nay, quod this Sompnour, that shal never betide.  
 I am a yeman knowen isful wide ;  
 My trouthe wol I hold, as in this cas.  
 For though thou were the devil Sathanas,  
 My trouthe wol I hold to thee, my brother, 7109  
 As I have sworne, and eche of us to other,  
 For to be trewe brethren in this cas,  
 And bothe we gon abouten our purchas.  
 Take thou thy part, what that men wol thee yeve,  
 And I shal min; thus may we bothe leve.  
 And if that any of us have more than other,  
 Let him be trewe, and part it with his brother.

I graunte, quod the devil, by my fay. 7117  
 And with that word they riden forth hir way,  
 And right at entring of the tounes ende,  
 To which this Sompnour shope him for to wende,  
 They saw a cart, that charged was with hay,  
 Which that a carter drove forth on his way.  
 Depe was the way, for which the carte stood :  
 The carter smote, and cried as he were wood,  
 Heit scot, heit brok, what spare ye for the stones ?  
 The fend (quod he) you fecche body and bones, 7126

As ferforthly as ever ye were foled, 7127  
 So mochel wo as I have with you tholed.  
 The devil have al, bothe hors, and cart, and hay.

The Sompnour sayde, here shal we have a pray;  
 And nere the fend he drow, as nought ne were,  
 Ful prively, and rouned in his ere:  
 Herken my brother, herken, by thy faith,  
 Herest thou not, how that the carter saith?  
 Hent it anon, for he hath yeve it thee, 7135  
 Both hay and cart, and eke his caples three.

Nay, quod the devil, God wot, never a del,  
 It is not his entente, trust thou me wel,  
 Axe him thysel, if thou not trowest me,  
 Or elles stint a while and thou shalt see.

This carter thakketh his hors upon the croupe,  
 And they begonne to drawen and to stoupe.  
 Heit now, quod he, ther Jesu Crist you blesse, 7143  
 And all his hondes werk, both more and lesse:  
 That was wel twight, min owen fiard boy,  
 I pray God save thy body and Seint Eloy.  
 Now is my cart out of the slough parde.

Lo, brother, quod the fend, what told I thee?  
 Here may ye seen, min owen dere brother,  
 The cheryl spake o thing, but he thought another.  
 Let us go forth abouten our viage;  
 Here win I nothing upon this cariage. 7152

Whan that they comen somewhat out of toun, 7153  
 This Sompnour to his brother gan to rounne ;  
 Brother, quod he, here woneth an old rebekke,  
 That had almost as lefe to lese hire nekke,  
 As for to yeve a peny of hire good.  
 I wol have twelf pens though that she be wood,  
 Or I wol somone hire to our office ;  
 And yet, God wot, of hire know I no vice.  
 But for thou canst not, as in this contree, 7161  
 Wippen thy cost, take here ensample of me.

This Sompnour clappeth at the widewes gate ;  
 Come out, he sayd, thou olde very trate ;  
 I trow thou hast som frere or preest with thee.

Who clappeth ? said this wif, *benedicite*,  
 God save you, sire, what is your swete will ?

I have, quod he, of somons here a bill.  
 Up peine of cursing, loke that thou be 7169  
 To-morwe before the archedekenes knee,  
 To answeere to the court, of certain thinges.

Now lord, quod she, Crist Jesu, king of kinges,  
 So wisly helpe me, as I ne may.  
 I have ben sike, and that ful many a day.  
 I may not go so fer (quod she) ne ride,  
 But I be ded, so priketh it in my side.  
 May I not axe a libel, sire Sompnour,  
 And answeere ther by my procuratour 7178

To swiche thing as men wold apposen me? 7179

Yes, quod this Sompnour, pay anon, let see,  
 Twelf pens to me, and I wol thee acquite.  
 I shal no profit haue therby but lite:  
 My maister hath the profit and, not I.  
 Come of, and let me riden hastily;  
 Yeve me twelf pens, I may no lenger tarie.

Twelf pens, quod she, now lady Seinte Marie  
 So wisly helpe me out of care and sinne, 7187  
 This wide world though that I shuld it winne,  
 Ne have I not twelf pens within my hold.  
 Ye knowen wel that I am poure and old;  
 Kithe your almesse upon me poure wretche.

Nay than, quod he, the foule fend me fetche,  
 If I thee excuse, though thou shuldest be spilt.

Alas! quod she, God wot, I have no gilt.

Pay me, quod he, or by the swete Seinte Anne  
 As I wol bere away thy newe panne 7196  
 For dette, which thou owest me of old,  
 Whan that thou madest thyn husband cokewold,  
 I paid at home for thy correction.

Thou liest, quod she, by my salvation,  
 Ne was I never or now, widew ne wif,  
 Sompned unto your court in all my lif;  
 Ne never I n'as but of my body trewe.  
 Unto the devil rough and blake of hewe

Yeve I thy body and my panne also.

7205

And whan the devil herd hire cursen so  
Upon hire knees, he sayd in this manere ;

Now, Mably, min owen moder dere,  
Is this your will in earnest that ye sey ?

The devil, quod she, so fetche him or he dey,  
And panne and all, but he wol him repent.

Nay, olde stot, that is not min entent,  
Quod this Sompnour, for to repenten me  
For any thing that I have had of thee ;  
I wold I had thy smok and every cloth.

7213

Now brother, quod the devil, be not wroth ;  
Thy body and this panne ben min by right.  
Thou shalt with me to helle yet to-night,  
Wher thou shalt knowen of our privetee  
More than a maister of divinitee.

And with that word the foule fend him hent.  
Body and soule, he with the devil went,  
Wher as thise Sompnours han hir heritage ;  
And God that maketh after his image  
Mankinde, save and gide us all and some,  
And lene this Sompnour good man to become.

7221

Lordings, I coude have told you (quod this frere)  
Had I had leiser for this Sompnour here,  
After the text of Crist, and Poule, and John,  
And of oure other doctours many on,

7230

Swiche peines, that your hertes might agrise, 7231  
 Al be it so, that no tonge may devise,  
 Though that I might a thousand winter telle,  
 The peines of thilke cursed hous of helle.  
 But for to kepe us fro that cursed place,  
 Waketh, and prayeth Jesu of his grace,  
 So kepe us fro the temptour Sathanas.  
 Herkneþ this word, beware as in this cas.  
 The leon sit in his awaite alway 7239  
 To sle the innocent, if that he may.  
 Disposeth ay your hertes to withstond  
 The fend, that you wold maken thral and bond;  
 He may not tempten you over your might,  
 For Crist wol be your champion and your knight;  
 And prayeth, that this Sompnour him repent  
 Of his misdedes, or that the fend him hent. 7246

## THE SOMPNOURES PROLOGUE.

THIS Sompnour in his stirops high he stood,  
 Upon this Frere his herte was so wood,  
 That like an aspen leef he quoke for ire :  
 Lordings, quod he, but o thing I desire,  
 I you beseche, that of your curtesie,  
 Sin ye han herd this false Frere lie,  
 As suffereth me I may my tale telle. 7253

This Frere bosteth that he knoweth helle,  
 And, God it wot, that is but litel wonder;  
 Freres and fendes beñ but litel asonder.

For parde, ye han often time herd telle,  
 How that a Frere ravished was to helle  
 In spirit ones by a visioun,  
 And as an angel lad him up and doun,  
 To shewen him the peines that ther were,  
 In all the place saw he not a Frere,  
 Of other folk he saw ynow in wo.

Unto this angel spake the Frere tho ;  
 Now, sire, quod he, han Freres swiche a grace,  
 That non of hem shal comen in this place ?

Yes, quod this angel, many a millioun :  
 And unto Sathanas he lad him doun ;  
 (And now hath Sathanas, saith he, a tayl  
 Broder than of a carrike is the sayl)  
 Hold up thy tayl, thou Sathanas, quod he,  
 Shew forth thin ers, and let the Frere see  
 Wher is the nest of Freres in this place.  
 And er than half a furlong way of space,  
 Right so as bees out swarmen of an hive,  
 Out of the devils ers ther gonnen drive  
 A twenty thousand Freres on a route.  
 And thurghout hell they swarmed al aboute,  
 And com agen, as fast as they may gon,

7254

7262

7270

7279



And in his ers they crepen everich on : 7280  
 He clapt his tayl agen, and lay ful still.

This Frere, whan he loked had his fill \*

Upon the turments of this sory place,

His spirit God restored of his grace

Into his body agen, and he awoke,

But natheles for fere yet he quoke,

So was the devils ers ay in his mind,

That is his heritage of veray kind. 7288

God save you alle, save this cursed frere ;

My prologue wol I end in this manere.

### THE SOMPNOURES TALE.

LORDINGS, ther is in Yorkshire, as I gesse,

A mersh contree ycalled Holdernesse,

In which ther went a limitour aboute 7293

To preche, and eke to beg, it is no doute.

And so befell that on a day this frere

Had preched at a chirche in his manere,

And specially aboven every thing

Excited he the peple in his preching

To trentals, and to yevè for Goddes sake,

Wherwith men mighten holy houses make,

Ther as divine service is honoured,

Not ther as it is wasted and devoured, 7302

Ne ther it nedeth not for to be yeven, 7303  
 As to possessioners, that mowen leven  
 (Thanked be God) in wele and abundance.  
 Trentals, sayd he, delivéren fro penance  
 Hir frendes soules, as wel olde as yonge,  
 Ye, whan that they ben hastily ysonge,  
 Not for to hold a preest jolif and gay,  
 He singeth not but o masse on a day.  
 Delivereth out (quod he) anon the soules. 7311  
 Ful hard it is, with fleshhook or with oules  
 To ben yclawed, or to bren or bake :  
 Now spede you hastily for Cristes sake.

And whan this frere had said all his entent,  
 .With *qui cum patre* forth his way he went.  
 Whan folk in chirche had yeve him what hem lest,  
 He went his way, no lenger wold he rest,  
 With scrippe and tipped staf, ytucked hie : 7319  
 In every hous he gan to pore and prie;  
 And begged mele and chese, or elles corn.  
 His felaw had a staf tipped with horn,  
 A pair of tables all of ivory,  
 And a pointel ypolished fetisly,  
 And wrofe alway the names, as he stood,  
 Of alle folk that yave hem any good,  
 Askaunce that he wolde for hem preye.  
 Yeve us a bushel whete, or malt, or reye, 7328

A Goddes kichel, or a trippe of chese, 7329  
 Or elles what you list, ye may not chese;  
 A Goddes halfpeny, or a masse peny;  
 Or yeve us of your braun, if ye have any,  
 A dagon of your blanket, leve dame,  
 Our suster dere, (lo here I write your name)  
 Bacon or beef, or swiche thing as ye find.

A sturdy harlot went hem ay behind,  
 That was hir hostes man, and bare a sakke, 7337  
 And what men yave hem, laid it on his bakke.  
 And whan that he was out at dore, anon  
 He planed away the names everich on,  
 That he before had written in his tables:  
 He served hem with nifles and with fables.

Nay, ther thou liest, thou Sompnour, quod the frere.  
 Pees, quod our hoste, for Cristes moder dere,  
 Tell forth thy tale, and spare it not at all. 7345

So thrive I, quod this Somppour, so I shall.

So long he went fro hous to hous, til he  
 Came to an hous, ther he was wont to be  
 Refreshed more than in a hundred places.  
 Sike lay the husbond man, whos that the place is,  
 Bedred upon a couche low he lay:

*Deus hic*, quod he, O Thomas frend, good day,  
 Sayde this frere all curtisly and soft.

Thomas, quod he, God yelde it you, ful oft 7354

Have I upon this benche faren ful wele, 7355  
 Here have I eten many a mery mele  
 And fro the benche he drowe away the cat,  
 And laied adoun his potent and his hat,  
 And eke his scrip, and set himself adoun :  
 His felaw was ywalked into toun  
 Forth with his knave, into that hostelrie,  
 Wher as he shope him thilke night to lie.

O dere maister, quod this sike man, 7363  
 How have ye faren sin that March began?  
 I saw you not this fourtene night and more.

God wot, quod he, laboured have I ful sore,  
 And specially for thy salvation  
 Have I sayd many a precious orison,  
 And for our other frendes, God hem blesse.  
 I have this day ben at your chirche at messe,  
 And said a sermon to my simple wit, 7371  
 Not all after the text of holy writ,  
 For it is hard to you, as I suppose,  
 And therefore wol I teche you ay the glose.  
 Glosing is a ful glorious thing certain,  
 For letter sleth, so as we clerkes sain.  
 Ther have I taught hem to be charitable,  
 And spend hir good ther it is resonable.  
 And ther I saw our dame, a, wher is she?

Yonder I trow that in the yard she be, 7380

Sayde this man, and she wol come anon. 7381

Ey maister, welcome be ye by Seint John,  
Sayde this wif, how fare ye hertily?

This frere ariseth up ful curtisly,  
And hire embraceth in his armés narwe,  
And kisseth hire swete, and chirketh as a sparwe  
With his lippes : dame, quod he, right wel,  
As he that is your servant every del.

Thanked be God, that you yaf soule and lif, 7389

Yet saw I not this day so faire a wif  
In all the chirche, God so save me.

Ye, God amende defautes, sire, quod she,  
Algates welcome be ye, by my fay.

*Grand mercy*, dame, that have I found alway.

But of your grete goodnesse, by your leve,  
I wolde pray you that ye not you greve,  
I wol with Thomas speke a litel throw :  
These curates ben so negligent and slow  
To gropen tendrely a conscience.

In shrift, in preching is my diligence  
And study, in Peters wordes and in Poules,  
I walke and fische Cristen mennes soules,  
To yeld our Lord Jesu his propre rent ;  
To sprede his word is sette all min entent.

Now by your faith, o dere sire, quod she,  
Chideth him wel for Seinte Charitee.

He is ay angry as is a pissemire, 7407  
 Though that he have all that he can desire,  
 Though I him wrie a-night, and make him wärm,  
 And over him lay my leg and eke min arm,  
 He groneth as our bore, lith in our stie :  
 Other disport of him right non have I,  
 I may not plesse him in no maner cas.

O Thomas, *jeo vous die*, Thomas, Thomas,  
 This maketh the fend, this muste ben amended. 7415  
 Ire is a thing that high God hath defended,  
 And therof wol I speke a word or two.

Now, maister, quod the wif, er that I go,  
 What wol ye dine ? I wol go therabout.

Now, dame, quod he, *jeo vous die sanz doute*,  
 Have I nat of a capon but the liver,  
 And of your white bred nat but a shiver,  
 And after that a rosted pigges hed, 7423  
 (But I ne wolde for me no beest were ded)  
 Than had I with you homly suffisance.  
 I am a man of litel sustenance.

My spirit hath his fostring in the Bible.  
 My body is ay so redy and so penible  
 To waken, that my stomak is destroyed.  
 I pray you, dame, that ye be nought annoied,  
 Though I so frendly you my conseil shewe ;  
 By God I n'old have told it but a fewe. 7432

Now, sire, quod she, but o word er I go. 7433  
 My child is ded within this wekes two,  
 Sone after that ye went out of this toun.

His deth saw I by revelatioun,  
 Sayde this frere, at home in our dortour.  
 I dare wel sain, that er than half an hour  
 After his deth, I saw him borne to blisse  
 In mine avision, so God me wisse.

So did our sextein, and our fermerere, 7441  
 That han ben trewe freres fifty yere ;  
 They may now, God be thanked of his lone,  
 Maken hir jubilee, and walke alone.

And up I arose, and all our covent eke,  
 With many a tere trilling on our cheke,  
 Withouten noise or clatering of belles,  
*Te deum* was our song, and nothing elles,  
 Save that to Crist I bade an orison, 7449  
 Thanking him of my revelation.

For, sire and dame, trusteth me right wel,  
 Our orisons ben more effectuel,  
 And more we seen of Cristes secree thinges,  
 Than borel folk, although that they be kinges.  
 We live in poverte, and in abstinence,  
 And borel folk in richesse and dispence  
 Of mete and drinke, and in hir foule delit.  
 We han this worldes lust all in despit. 7458

Lazar and Dives liveden diversely, 7459  
 And divers guerdon hadden they therby.  
 Who so wol pray, he must fast and be clene,  
 And fat his soule, and make his body lene. ■  
 We fare, as sayth the apostle; cloth and food  
 Sufficeth us, though they be not ful good.  
 The clenenesse and the fasting of us freres,  
 Maketh that Crist accepteth our praieres.

Lo, Moises forty daies and forty night 7467  
 Fasted, er that the high God ful of might  
 Spake with him in the mountagne of Sinay :  
 With empty wombe of fasting many a day,  
 Received he the lawe, that was writen  
 With Goddes finger; and Eli, wel ye witen,  
 In mount Oreb, er he had any speche  
 With highe God, that is our lives leche,  
 He fasted long, and was in contemplanche. 7475

Aaron, that had the temple in governance,  
 And eke the other preestes everich on,  
 Into the temple whan they shulden gon  
 To praien for the peple, and do servise,  
 They n'olden drinken in no maner wise  
 No drinke, which that might hem dronken make,  
 But ther in abstinence pray and wake,  
 Lest that they deiden : take heed what I say—  
 But they be sobre that for the peple pray— 7484



Waite that I say—no more : for it sufficeth. 7485  
 Our Lord Jesu, as holy writ deviseth,  
 Yave us ensample of fasting and praieres :  
 Therefore we mendiants, we sely freres,  
 Ben wedded to poverte and continence,  
 To charitee, humblesse, and abstinence,  
 To persecutjon for rightwisnesse,  
 To weping, misericorde, and to clenenesse.  
 And therefore may ye see that our praieres 7493  
 (I speke of us, we mendiants, we freres)  
 Ben to the highe God more acceptable  
 Than youres, with your festes at your table.

Fro Paradis first, if I shal not lie,  
 Was man out chased for his glotonie,  
 And chast was man in Paradis certain.  
 But herken now, Thomas, what I shal sain,  
 I have no text of it, as I suppose, 7501  
 But I shal find it in a maner glose ;  
 That specially our swete Lord Jesus  
 Spake this by freres, whan he sayde thus,  
 Blessed be they that poure in spirit ben.  
 And so forth all the gospel may ye sen,  
 Whether it be liker our profession,  
 Or hirs that swimmen in possession,  
 Fie on hir pompe, and on hir glotonie,  
 And on hir lewednesse : I hem defie. 7510

Mesthinketh they beȝ like Jovinian, 7511  
 Fat as a whale, and walken as a swan ;  
 Al vinolent as botel in the spence ;  
 Hir praier is of ful gret reverence ;  
 Whan they for soules say the Psalm of Davit,  
 Lo, buf they say, *Cor meum eructavit.*

Who foloweth Cristes gospel and his lore  
 But we, that humble ben, and chast, and pore,  
 Workers of Goddes word, not auditours ? 7519  
 Therefore right as an hauke upon a sours  
 Up springeth into the aire, right so praieres  
 Of charitable and chast besy freres,  
 Maken hir sours to Goddes eres two.  
 Thomas, Thomas, so mote I ride or go,  
 And by that lord that cleped is Seint Ive,  
 N'ere thou our broder, shuldest thou not thrive.  
 In our chapitre pray we day and night 7527  
 To Crist, that he thee sende hele and might  
 Thy body for to welden hastily.

God wot, quod he, nothing therof fele I,  
 As help me Crist, as I in fewe yeres  
 Have spended upon divers maner freres  
 Ful many a pound, yet fare I never the bet ;  
 Certain my good have I almost beset :  
 Farewel my good, for it is al ago.

The frere answered, O Thomas, dost thou so ? 7535

What nedeth you diverse freres to seche? 7537  
 What nedeth him that hath a parfit leche,  
 To sechen other leches in the toun?  
 Your inconstance is your confusion.  
 Hold ye than me, or elles our covent,  
 To pray for you ben insufficient?  
 Thomas, that jape n'is not worth a mite;  
 Your maladie is for we han to lite.  
 A, yeve that covent half a quarter otes; 7545  
 And yeve that covent four and twenty grotes;  
 And yeve that frere a peny, and let him go:  
 Nay, nay, Thomas, it may no thing be so.  
 What is a ferthing worth parted on twelve?  
 Lo, eche thing that is oned in himselve  
 Is more strong than whan it is yscatered.  
 Thomas, of me thou shalt not ben yflatered,  
 Thou woldest han our labour al for nought. 7553  
 The highe God, that all this world hath wrought,  
 Saith, that the workman worthy is his hire.  
 Thomas, nought of your tresor I desire  
 As for myself, but that all our covent  
 To pray for you be ay so diligent:  
 And for to bilden Cristes'owen chirche.  
 Thomas, if ye wol lernen for to wirche,  
 Of bilding up of chirches may ye finde  
 If it be good, in Thomas lif of Inde. 7562

Ye ligger here ful of anger and of ire,  
 With which the devil set your herte on fire,  
 And chiden here this holy innocent  
 Your wif, that is so good and patient.  
 And therefore trow me, Thomas, if thee lest,  
 Ne strive not with thy wif, as for the best.  
 And bere this word away now by thy faith,  
 Touching swiche thing, lo, what the wise saith :

7563

Within thy hous ne be thou no leon ;  
 To thy suggests do non oppression ;  
 Ne make thou not thin acquaintance to flee.  
 † And yet, Thomas, eftsones charge I thee,  
 Beware from ire that in thy bosom slepeth,  
 Ware fro the serpent, that so slily crepeth  
 Under the gras, and stingeth subtilly.  
 Beware, my sone, and herken patiently,  
 That twenty thousand men han lost hir lives  
 For striving with hir lemmans and hir wives.  
 Now sith ye han so holy and meek a wif,  
 What nedeth you, Thomas, to maken strif?  
 Ther n'is ywis no serpent so cruel,  
 Whan man tredeth on his tail, ne half so fel,  
 As woman is, whan she hath caught an ire ;  
 Veray vengeance is than all hire desire.

7571

7579

Ire is a sinne, on of the grete seven,  
 Abhominable unto the God of heven,

7588

And to himself it is destruction. 7589

This every lewed vicar and parson  
Can say, how ire engendreth homicide ;  
Ire is in soth executour of pride.

I coud of ire say so mochel sorwe,  
My tale shulde lasten til to-morwe.  
And therefore pray I God both day and night,  
An irous man God send him litel might.

It is gret harm, and certes gret pitee 7597  
To sette an irous man in high degree.

Whilom ther was an irous potestat,  
As saith Senek, that during his estat  
Upon a day out riden knightes two.  
And, as fortune wold that it were so,  
That on of hem came home, that other nought.

Anon the knight before the juge is brought,  
That saide thus ; thou hast thy felaw slain, 7605

For which I deme thee to the deth certain.

And to another knight commanded he :

Go, lede him to the deth, I charge thee.

And happed, as they wenten by the wey

Toward the place ther as he shulde dey,

The knight came, which men wenden had be dede.

Than thoughten they it was the beste rede

To lede hem bothe to the juge again.

They saiden, lord, the knight ne hath not slain 7614

His felaw, here he stondest hol alive.

7615

Ye shall be ded, quod he, so mot I thrive,  
That is to say, both on, and two, and three.  
And to the firste knight right thus spake he.

I damned thee, thou must algate be ded :  
And thou also must nedes lese thyn hed,  
For thou art cause why thy felaw deyeth.  
And to the thridde knight right thus he seyeth,  
Thou hast not don that I commanded thee.  
And thus he did do slen hem alle three.

7623

Irous Cambises was eke dronkelew,  
And ay delighted him to ben a shrew.  
And so befell, a lord of his meinie,  
That loved vertuous moralitee,  
Sayd on a day betwix hem two right thus :  
A lord is lost, if he be vicious ;  
And dronkenesse is eke a foule record  
Of any man, and namely of a lord.  
Ther is ful many an eye and many an ere  
Awaiting on a lord, and he n'ot wher.  
For Goddes love drinke more attemprely :  
Win maketh man to lesen wretchedly  
His mind, and eke his limmes everich on.  
The revers shalt thou see, quod he, anon,  
And preve it by thyn owen experience,  
That win ne doth to folk no swiche offence.

7631

7640

Ther is no win bereveth me my might 7641  
 Of hond, ne foot, ne of min eyen sight.  
 And for despit he dranke mochel more  
 An hundred part than he had don before,  
 And right anon, this cursed irous wretche  
 This knightes sone let before him fetche,  
 Commanding him he shuld before him stond :  
 And sodenly he took his bow in hond,,  
 And up the streng he pulled to his ere, 7649  
 And with an arwe he slow the child right ther.

Now whether have I a siker hond or non ?  
 Quod he, Is all my might and minde agon ?  
 Hath win bereved me min eyen sight ?

What shuld I tell the answer of the knight ?

His son was slain, ther is no more to say.  
 Beth ware therfore with lordes for to play,  
 Singeth *Placebo*, and I shal if I can, 7657

But if it be unto a poure man :  
 To a poure man men shuld his vices telle,  
 But not to a lord, though he shuld go to helle.

Lo, irous Cirus, thilke Persien,  
 How he destroyed the river of Gisen,  
 For that an hors of his was dreint therin,  
 Whan that he wente Babilon to win :  
 He made that the river was so smal,  
 That wimmen might it waden over al. 7666

Lo, what said he, that so wel techen can ? 7667  
 Ne be no felaw to non irous man,  
 Ne with no wood man walke by the way,  
 Lest thee repent ; I wol no forther say.

Now, Thomas, leve brother, leve thin ire,  
 Thou shalt me find as just, as is a squire ;  
 Hold not the devils knif ay to thin herte,  
 Thin anger doth thee all to sore smerte,  
 But shew to me all thy confession. 7675

Nay, quod the sike man, by Seint Simon  
 I have ben shriven this day of my curat ;  
 I have him told al holly min estat.  
 Nedeth no mo to speke of it, sayth he,  
 But if me list of min humilitee.

Yeve me than of thy gold to make our cloistre,  
 Quod he, for many a muscle and many an oistre,  
 Whan other men han ben ful wel at ese, 7683  
 Hath been our food, our cloistre for to rese :  
 And yet, God wot, uneth the fundament  
 Parfourmed is, ne of our pavement  
 N'is not a tile yet within our wones :  
 By God we owen fourty pound for stones.  
 Now help, Thomas, for him that harwed helle,  
 For elles mote we oure bokes selle,  
 And if ye lacke oure predication,  
 Than goth this world all to destruction. 7692



For who so fro this world wold us bereve, 7693

So God me save, Thomas, by your leve,

He wold bereve out of this world the sonne.

For who can teche and worken as we conne?

And that is not of lital time, (quod he).

But sithen Elie was, and Elisee,

Han freres ben, that find I of record,

In charitee, ythanked be our Lord.

Now, Thomas, help for Seinte Charitee. 7701

And down anon he sette him on his knee.

This sike man woxe wel neigh wood for ire,

He wolde that the frere had ben a-fire

With his false dissimulation.

Swiche thing as is in my possession,

Quod he, that may I yeve you and non other :

Ye sain me thus, how that I am your brother.

Ye certes, quod this frere, ye, trusteth wel ; 7709

"I took our dame the letter of our sele.

Now wel, quod he, and somewhat shal I yeve

Unto your holy covent while I live ;

And in thin hond thou shalt it have anon,

On this condition, and other' non,

That thou depart it so, my dere brother,

That every frere have as moche as other :

This shalt thou swere on thy profession

Withouten fraud or cavilation. 7718

I swere it, quod the frere, upon my faith. 7719  
 And therwithall his hond in his he layth;  
 Lo here my faith, in me shal bé no lak.

Than put thin hond adoun right by my bak,  
 Saide this man, and grope wel behind,  
 Benethe my buttoke, ther thou shalte find  
 A thing, that I have hid in privetee.  
 A, thought this frere, that shal go with me.  
 And doun his hond he launcheth to the clifte; 7727  
 In hope for to finden ther a gifte.

And whan this sike man felte this frere  
 About his towel gropen ther and here,  
 Amid his hond he let the frere a fart;  
 Ther n'is no capel drawing in a cart,  
 That might han let a fart of swiche a soun.

The frere up sterte, as doth a wood leoun:  
 A, false cherl, quod he, for Goddes bones, 7735  
 This hast thou in despit don for the nones:  
 Thou shalt abie this fart, if that I may.

His meinie, which that herden this affray,  
 Came leping in, and chased out the frere,  
 And forth he goth with a ful angry chere,  
 And fet his felaw, ther as lay his store:  
 He loked as it were a wilde bore,  
 And grinte with his teeth, so was he wroth.  
 A sturdy pas doun to the court he goth, 7744

Wher as ther woned a man of gret honour, 7745  
 To whom that he was alway confessour :  
 This worthy man was lord of that village.  
 This frere came, as he were in a rage,  
 Wher as this lord sat eting at his bord :  
 Unnethes might the frere speke o word,  
 Til atte last he saide, God you see.

This lord gan loke, and saide, *Benedicite !*  
 What ? frere John, what maner world is this ? 7753  
 I see wel that som thing ther is amis ;  
 Ye loken as the wood were ful of theves.  
 Sit down anon, and tell me what your greve is,  
 And it shal ben amended, if I may.

I have, quod he, had a despit to day,  
 God yelde you, adoun in your village,  
 That in this world ther n'is so poure a page,  
 That he n'olde have abhominatioun 7761  
 Of that I have received in youre toun :  
 And yet ne greveth me nothing so sore,  
 As that the olde cherl, with lokkes hore,  
 Blasphemed hathoure holy covent eke.

Now, maister, quod this lord, I you beseke.

No maister, sire, quod he, but servitour,  
 Though I have had in scole that honour.  
 God liketh not, that men us Rabi call,  
 Neither in market, ne in your large hall. 7770

No force, quod he, but tell me all your grefe. 7771  
 Sire, quod this Frere, an odious meschefe  
 This day betid is to min ordre, and me,  
 And so *per consequens* to eche degree.  
 Of holy chirche, God amende it sone.

Sire, quod the lord, ye wot what is to don :  
 Distempre you not, ye ben my confessour.  
 Ye ben the salt of the erthe, and the savour ;  
 For Goddes love your paciencè now hold ; 7779  
 Telle me your grefe. And he anon him told  
 As ye han herd before, ye wot wel what.

The lady of the hous ay stille sat,  
 Til she had herde what the Frere said.

Ey, goddes moder, quod she, blisful maid,  
 Is ther ought elles ? tell me faithfully.  
 Madame, quod he, how thinketh you therby ?  
 How that me thinketh ? quod she ; so God me spede,  
 I say, a cherle hath don a cherles dede. 7788  
 What shuld I say ? God let him never the ;  
 His sike hed is ful of vanitee ;  
 I hold him in a maner frenesie.

Madame, quod he, by God I shal not lie,  
 But I in other wise may ben awreke,  
 I shal diffame him over all, ther I speke ;  
 This false blasphemour, that charged me  
 To parten that wol not departed be, 7796

To every man ylike, with meschance. 7797

The lord sat stille, as he were in a trance,  
 And in his herte he rolled up and down,  
 How had this cherl imaginatioun  
 To shewen swiche a probleme to the frere.  
 Never erst or now ne herd I swiche matere;  
 I trow the Devil put it in his mind.

In all Arsmetrike shal ther no man find  
 Beforn this day of swiche a question. 7805

Who shulde make a demonstration,  
 That every man shuld han ylike his part  
 As of a soun or savour of a fart?

O nice proude cherl, I shrewe his face.

Lo, sires, quod the lord, with harde grace,  
 Who ever herd of swiche a thing or now?  
 To every man ylike?, tell me how.

It is an impossible, it may not be. 7813

Ey, nice cherl, God let him never the.

The rombling of a fart, and every soun,

N'is but of aire reverberatioun,

And ever it wasteth lite and lite away;

Ther n'is no man can demen, by my fay,

If that it were departed equally.

What? lo my cherl, lo yet how shrewedly

Unto my confessour to-day he spake;

I hold him certain a demoniake. 7822

Now ete your mete, and let the cherl go play, 7823  
 Let him go honge himself a devil way.

Now stood the lordes squier atte bord,  
 That carf his mete, and herde word by word  
 Of all this thing, of which I have you sayd.

My lord, quod he, be ye not evil apaid,  
 I coude telle for a gounne-cloth  
 To you, sire frere, so that ye be not wroth,  
 How that this fart shuld even ydeled be 7831  
 Amonge your covent, if it liked thee.

Tell, quod the lord, and thóu shalt have anon  
 A gounne-cloth, by God and by seint John.

My lord, quod he, whan that the weder is faire,  
 Withouten winde, or pertourbing of aire,  
 Let bring a cart-whele here into this hall,  
 But loke that it have his spokes all ;  
 Twelf spokes hath a cart-whele comunly ; 7839  
 And bring me than twelf freres, wete ye why ?  
 For threttene is a covent as I gesse :  
 Your confessour here for his worthinesse  
 Shal parfourme up the noumbre of his covent.  
 Than shall they knele adoun by on assent,  
 And to every spokes end in this manere  
 Ful sadly lay his nose shal a frere ;  
 Your noble confessour, ther God him save,  
 Shal hold his nose upright under the nave. 7843

Than shal this cherl, with bely stif and tought 7849  
As any tabour, hider ben ybrought ;

And set him on the whele right of this cart

Upon the nave, and make him let a fart,

And ye shall seen, up peril of my lif,

By veray preef that is demonstratif,

That equally the soun of it wol wende,

And eke the stinke, unto the spokes ende,

Save that this worthy man, your confessour, 7857

(Because he is a man of gret honour)

Shal han the firste fruit, as reson is.

The noble usage of freres yet it is,

The worthy men of hem shul first be served.

And certainly he hath it wel deserved ;

He hath to-day taught us so mochel good,

With preching in the pulpit ther he stood,

That I may youchesauf, I say for me, 7865

He hadde the firste smel of fartes three,

And so wold all his brethren hardely,

He bereth him so faire and holyly.

The lord, the lady, and eche man, save the frere,

Sayden; that Jankin spake in this matere

As wel as Euclide, or elles Ptholomee.

Touching the cherl, they sayden, subtiltee

And highe wit made him speken as he spake ;

He n'is no fool, ne no demoniake. 7874

And Jankin hath ywonne a newe goune ;  
My tale is don, we ben almost at toune.

7875

THE CLERKES PROLOGUE.

SIRE Clerk of Oxenforde, our hoste said,  
Ye ride as stille and coy, as doth a maid,  
Were newe spoused, sitting at the bord :  
This day ne herd I of your tonge a word.  
I trow ye studie abouten som sophime :  
But Salomon saith, that every thing hath time.  
For Goddes sake as beth of better chere,  
It is no time for to studien here.

7880

Tell us som mery tale by your fay ;  
For what man that is entred in a play,  
He nedes most unto the play assent.  
But precheth not, as freres don in Lent,  
To make us for our olde sinnes wepe,  
Ne that thy tale make us not to slepe.

7888

Tell us som mery thing of adventures,  
Your termes, your coloures, and your figures,  
Kepe hem in store, til so be ye endite  
Hie stile, as whan that men to kinges write.  
Speketh so plain at this time, I you pray,  
That we may understonden what ye say.

This worthy Clerk benignely answerde ;

7897



Hoste, quod he, I am under your yerde, 7898  
 Ye have of us as now the governance,  
 And therefore wolde I do you obeysance,  
 As fer as reson asketh hardely :

I wol you tell a tale, which that I  
 Lerned at Padowe of a worthy clerk,  
 As preved by his wordes and his werk.  
 He is now ded, and nailed in his cheste,  
 I pray to God so yeve his soule reste. 7906.

Fraunceis Petrark, the laureat poete,  
 Highte this clerk, whos rethorike swete  
 Enlumined all Itaille of poetrie,  
 As Lynyan did of philosophie,  
 Or law, or other art particulere :  
 But deth, that wol not suffre us dwellen here,  
 But as it were a twinkling of an eye,  
 Hem both hath slaine, and alle we shul dye. 7914

But forth to tellen of this worthy man,  
 That taughte me this tale, as I began,  
 I say that first he with hie stile enditeth  
 (Or he the body of his tale writeth)  
 A proheme, in the which descriveth he  
 Piemont, and of Saluces the contree,  
 And speketh of Apennin the hilles hie,  
 That ben the boundes of west Lumbardie :  
 And of mount Vesulus in special,

Wher as the Poo out of a welle smal 7924  
 Taketh his firste springing and his sours,  
 That estward ay encreseth in his cours  
 To Emelie ward, to Ferare, and Venise,  
 The which a longe thing were to devise.  
 And trewely, as to my jugement,  
 Me thinketh it a thing impertinent,  
 Save that he wol conveyen his matere;  
 But this is the tale which that ye mow here. 7922

### THE CLERKES TALE.

Ther is right at the West side of Itaille  
 Doun at the rote of Vesulus the cold,  
 A lusty plain, habundant of vitaille,  
 Ther many a toun and tour thou maist behold, 7936  
 That founded were in time of fathers old,  
 And many another delitable sighte,  
 And Saluces this noble contree highte.

A markis whilom lord was of that lond,  
 As were his worthy elders him before,  
 And obeysant, ay redy to his hond,  
 Were all his lieges, bothe lesse and more:  
 Thus in delit he liveth, and hath don yore, 7944

Beloved and drad, thurgh favour of fortune,  
Both of his lordes, and of his commune. . . 7945

Therwith he was, to speken of linage,  
The gentilest yborne of Lumbardie,  
A faire person, and strong, and yongg of agè,  
And ful of honour and of curtesie :  
Discret ynough, his contree for to gie,  
Sauf in som thinges that he was to blame, 7952  
And Walter was this yonge lordes name.

I blame him thus, that he considered nought  
In time coming what might him betide,  
But on his lust present was all his thought,  
And for to hauke and hunt on every side :  
Wel neigh all other cures let he slide,  
And eke he n'old (and that was worst of all) 7959  
Wedden no wif for ought that might befall.

Only that point his peple bare so sore,  
That flockmel on a day to him they went,  
And on of hem, that wisest was of lore,  
(Or elles that the lord wold best assent  
That he shuld tell him what the peple ment,  
Or elles coud he wel shew swiche matere)  
He to the markis said as ye shull here. 7967

O noble markis, your humanitee  
 Assureth us and yeveth us hardinesse,  
 As oft as time is of necessitee,  
 That we to you mow tell our hevinesse:  
 Accepteth, lord, than of your gentillesse,  
 That we with pitous herte unto you plaine,  
 And let your eres nat my vois disdaine. 7968

Al have I not to don in this matere  
 More than another man hath in this place,  
 Yet for as moch as ye, my lord so dere,  
 Han 'alway shewed me favour and grace,  
 I dare the better aske of you a space  
 Of audience, to shewen our request,  
 And ye, my lord; to don right as you lest. 7975

For certes, lord, so wel us liketh you  
 And all your werke, and ever have don, that we  
 Ne couden not ourself devisen how  
 We mighten live in more felicitee:  
 Save o thing, lord, if it your wille be,  
 That for to be a wedded man you lest,  
 Than were your peple in soverain hertes rest. 7982

Boweth your nekke under the blisful yok  
 Of soveraintee, and not of servise, 7990

Which that men clepen spousaile or wedlok : 7991  
 And thinketh, lord, among your thoughtes wise,  
 How that our dayes passe in sondry wise ;  
 For though we slepe, or wake, or rome, or ride,  
 Ay fleth the time, it wol no man abide.

And though your grene youthe floure as yet,  
 In crepeth age alway as still as ston,  
 And deth manaseth every age, and smit 7998  
 In eche estat, for ther escapeth non :  
 And al so certain, as we knowe eche on  
 That we shul die, as uncertain, we all  
 Ben of that day whan deth shal on us fall.

Accepteth than of us the trewe entent,  
 That never yet refuseden your hest,  
 And we wol, lord, if that ye wol assent, 8005  
 Chese you a wife in short time at the mest,  
 Borne of the gentillest and of the best  
 Of all this lond; so that it oughte seme  
 Honour to God and you, as we can deme.

Deliver us out of all this besy drede,  
 And take a wif, for highe Goddes sake :  
 For if it so befell, as God forbede,  
 That thurgh your deth your linage shulde slake,  
 And that a strange successour shuld take 8014

Your heritage, o! wo were us on live :  
 Wherefore we pray you hastily to wive.

8015

Hir meke praierē and hir pitous chere  
 Made the markis for to han pitee.  
 Ye wol, quod he, min owen peplē dere,  
 To that I never er thought constrainen mē.  
 I mē rejoyced of my libertee,  
 That selden time is found in mariage ;  
 Ther I was free, I moste ben in servage.

8022

But natheles I see your trewe entent,  
 And trust upon your wit, and have don ay :  
 Wherefore of my free will I wol assent  
 To wedden me, as sone as ever I may.  
 But ther as ye han profred me to-day  
 To chesen me a wif, I you release  
 That chois, and pray you of that profer cese.

8029

For God it wot, that children often ben  
 Unlike hir worthy eldres hem before,  
 Bountee cometh al of God, not of the stren,  
 Of which they ben ygendred and ybore :  
 I trust in Goddes bountee, and therefore  
 My mariage, and min estat, and rest  
 I him betake, he may don as him lest.

8037

Let me alone in chesing of my wif, 8038  
 That charge upon my bak I wol endure :  
 But I you pray, and charge upon your lif,  
 That what wif that I take, ye me assure  
 To worship hire while that hire lif may dure,  
 In word and werk both here and elles where,  
 As she an emperoures doughter were.

And forthermore this shuln ye swere, that ye 8045  
 Again my chois shul never grutch ne strive.  
 For sith I shal forgo my libertee  
 At your request, as ever mote I thrive,  
 Ther as min herte is set, ther wol I wive :  
 And but ye wol assent in swiche manere,  
 I pray you speke no more of this matere.

With hertly will they sworn and assenten 8052  
 To all this thing, ther saide not o wight nay :  
 Beseching him of grace, or that they wenten,  
 That he wold granten hem a certain day  
 Of his spousaile, as sone as ever he may,  
 For yet alway the peple somewhat dred,  
 Lest that this markis wolde no wif wed.

He granted hem a day, swiche as him lest,  
 On which he wold be wedded sikerly, 8060

And said he did all this at hir request ; 8061  
 And they with humble herte ful buxumly  
 Kneling upon hir knees ful reverently  
 Him thonken all, and thus they han an end,  
 Of hir entente, and home agen they wend.

And hereupon he to his officeres  
 Commandeth for the feste to purvay.  
 And to his privee knightes and squieres 8068  
 Swiche charge he yave, as him list on hem lay :  
 And they to his commandement obey,  
 And eche of hem doth al his diligence  
 To do unto the feste al reverence.

*Pars secunda.*

Nought fer fro thilke paleis honourable, 8073  
 Wher as this markis shope his mariage,  
 Ther stood a thorpe, of sighte delitable,  
 In which that poure folk of that village  
 Hadden hir bestes and hir herbergage,  
 And of hir labour toke hir sustenance,  
 After that the erthe yave hem habundance.

Among this poure folk ther dwelt a man,  
 Which that was holden pourest of hem all : 8081



But highe God sometime senden can  
 His grace unto a litel oxes stall :  
 Janicola men of that thorpe him call.  
 A doughter had he, faire ynough to sight,  
 And Grisildis this yonge maiden hight.

But for to speke of vertuous beautee,  
 Than was she on the fairest under sonne :  
 Ful pourely yfostred up was she :  
 No likerous lust was in hire herte yronne ;  
 Wel offer of the well than of the tonne  
 She dranke, and for she wolde vertue please,  
 She knew wel labour, but non idel ese.

But though this mayden tendre were of age,  
 Yet in the brest of hire virginitee  
 Ther was enclosed sad and ripe corage :  
 And in gret reverence and charitee  
 Hire olde poure fader fostred she :  
 A few sheep spinning on the feld she kept,  
 She wolde not ben idel til she slept.

And whan she homward came, she wolde bring  
 Wortes and other herbes times oft,  
 The which she shred and sethe for hire living,  
 And made hire bed ful hard, and nothing soft :  
 And ay she kept hire fadres lif on loft

With evêry obeisance and diligence,  
That child may don to fadres reverence.

8106

Upon Grisilde, this poure creature,  
Ful oftēn sithe this markis sette his eye,  
As he on hunting rode paraventure :  
And whan it fell that he might hire espie,  
He not with wanton loking of folie  
His eyen cast on hire, but in sad wise  
Upon hire chere he wold him oft avise,

8113

Commending in his herte hire womanhede,  
And eke hire vertue, passing any wight  
Of so yong age, as wel in chere as dede.  
For though the peple have no gret insight  
In vertue, he considered ful right  
Hire bountee, and disposed that he wold  
Wedde hire only, if ever he wedden shold.

8120

The day of wedding came, but no wight can  
Tellen what woman that it shulde be,  
For which mervaille wondred many a man,  
And saiden, whan they were in privetee,  
Wol not our lord yet leve his vanitee?  
Wol he not wedde? alas, alas the while!  
Why wol he thus himself and us begile?

8128

.But natheles this markis hath do make 8129  
Of gemmes, sette in gold and in asure,  
Broches and ringes, for Grisildes sake,  
And of hire clothing toke he the mesure  
Of a maiden like unto hire stature,  
And eke of other ornamentes all,  
That unto swiche a wedding shulde fall.

The time of underne of the same day 8136  
Approcheth, that this wedding shulde be,  
And all the paleis put was in array,  
Both halle and chambres, eche in his degree,  
Houses of office stuffed with plentee  
Ther mayst thou see of deinteous vitaille,  
That may be found, as fer as lasteth Itaille.

This real markis richely arraide, 8143  
Lordes and ladies in his compaignie,  
The which unto the feste weren praide,  
And of his retenue the bachelerie,  
With many a soun of sondry melodie,  
Unto the village, of the which I told,  
In this array the righte way they hold.

Grisilde of this (God wot) ful innocent,  
That for hire shapen was all this array, 8151

To fetchen water at a welle is went, 8152  
 And cometh home as sone as ever she may.  
 For wel she had herd say, that thilke day  
 The markis shulde wedde, and, if she might,  
 She wolde fayn han seen som of that sight.

She thought, I wol with other maidens stond,  
 That ben my felawes, in our dore, and see  
 The markisesse, and therto wol I fond 8159  
 To don at home, as sone as it may be,  
 The labour which that longeth unto me,  
 And than I may at leiser hire behold,  
 If she this way unto the castel hold.

And as she wolde over the threswold gon,  
 The markis came and gan hire for to call,  
 And she set down hire water-pot anon 8166  
 Beside the threswold in an oxes stall,  
 And down upon hire knees she gan to fall,  
 And with sad countenance kneleth still,  
 Til she had herd what was the lordes will.

This thoughtful markis spake unto this maid  
 Ful soberly, and said in this manere :  
 Wher is your fader, Grisildis ? he said.  
 And she with reverence in humble chere  
 Answered, lord, he is al redy here. 8175

And in she goth withouten lenger lette,  
And to the markis she hire fader fette."

8176

He-by the hond than toke this poure man,  
And saide thus, whan he him had aside :  
Janicola, I neither may ne can  
Lenger the plesance of min herte hide,  
If that thou vouchesauf, what so betide,  
Thy doughter wol I take or that I wend  
As for my wif, unto hire lives end.

8183

Thou lovest me, that wot I wel certain,  
And art my faithful liegeman ybore,  
And all that liketh me, I dare wel sain  
It liketh thee, and specially therfore  
Tell me that point, that I have said before,  
If that thou wolt unto this purpos drawe,  
To taken me as for thy son in lawe.

8190

This soden cas this man astoned so,  
That red he wex, abaist, and al quaking  
He stood, unnethes said he wordes mo,  
But only thus ; Lord, quod he, my willing  
Is as ye wol, ne ageins your liking  
I wol no thing, min owen lord so dere,  
Right as you list, governeth this matere.

8198

Than wol I, quod this markis softely,  
 That in thy chambre, I, and thou, and she,  
 Have a collation, and wost thou why?  
 For I wol ask hire, if it hire wille be  
 To be my wif, and reule hire after me:  
 And all this shal be don in thy presence,  
 I wol not speke out of thin audience.

8199

And in the chambre, while they were aboute  
 The trêtee, which as ye shul after here,  
 The peple came into the hous withoute,  
 And wondred hem, in how honest manere  
 Ententifly she kept hire fader dere:  
 But utterly Grisildis wonder might,  
 For never erst ne saw she swiche a sight.

8206

No wonder is though that she be astoned,  
 To see so gret a gest come in that place,  
 She never was to non swiche gestes woned,  
 For which she loked with ful pale face.  
 But shortly forth this matere for-to chace,  
 Thisse arn the wordes that the markis said  
 To this benigne, veray, faithful maid.

8213

Grisilde, he said, ye shuln wel understand,  
 It liketh to your fader and to me,

8221

That I you wedde, and eke it may so stond 8222  
 As I suppose, ye wol that it so be :  
 But thise demaundes aske I first (quod he)  
 That sin it shal be don in hasty wise,  
 Wol ye assent, or elles you avise ?

I say this, be ye redy with good herte  
 To all my lust, and that I freely may  
 As me best thinketh do you laugh or smerte, 8229  
 And never ye to grutchen, night ne day,  
 And ekè whan I say ya, ye say not nay,  
 Neither by word, ne frouning countenance ?  
 Swere this, and here I swere our alliance.

Wondring upon this thing, quaking for drede,  
 She saide ; Lord, indigne and unworthy  
 Am I, to thilke honour, that ye me bede, 8236  
 But as ye wol yourself, right so wol I :  
 And here I swere, that never willingly  
 In werk, ne thought, I n'ill you disobeie  
 For to be ded, though me were loth to deiè.

This is ynough, Grisilde min, quod he.  
 And forth he goth with a ful sobre chere,  
 Out at the dore, and after than came she,  
 And to the peple he said in this manere : 8244

This is my wif, quod he, that stondeth here. . 8245  
 Honoureth her, and loveth hire, I pray,  
 Who so me loveth, ther n'is no more to say.

And for that nothing of hire olde gere  
 She shulde bring into his hous, he bad  
 That women shuld despoilen hire right there,  
 Of which these ladies weren nothing glad  
 To handle hire clothes wherin she was clad : 8252  
 But natheles this maiden bright of hew  
 Fro foot to hed they clothed han all new.

Hire heres han they kempt, that lay untressed  
 Ful rudely, and with hir fingres smal  
 A coroune on hire hed they han ydressed,  
 And sette hire ful of noches gret and smal :  
 Of hire array what shuld I make a tale ? 8259  
 Unneth the peple hire knew for hire fairnesse,  
 Whan she transmewed was in swiche richesse.

This markis hath hire spoused with a ring  
 Brought for the same cause, and than hire sette  
 Upon an hors snow-white, and wel ambling,  
 And to his paleis, or he lenger lette,  
 (With joyful peple, that hire lad and mette)  
 Conveyed hire, and thus the day they spende  
 In revel, til the sonne gan descende. 8268



And shortly forth this tale for to chace, 8269  
 I say, that to this newe markisesse  
 God hath swiche favour sent hire of his grace,  
 That it ne semeth not by likelinessse  
 That she was borne and fed in rudenesse,  
 As in a cote, or in an oxes stall,  
 But nourished in an amperoures hall.

To every wight she waxen is so dere, 8276  
 And worshipful, that folk ther she was bore,  
 And fro hire birthe knew hire yere by yere,  
 Unnethes trowed they, but dorst han swore,  
 That to Janicle, of which I spake before,  
 She doughter n'as, for as by conjecture,  
 Hem thoughte she was another creature.

For though that ever vertuous was she, 8283  
 She was encreased in swiche excellence  
 Of thewes good, yset in high bountee,  
 And so discrete, and faire of eloquence,  
 So benigne, and so digne of reverence,  
 And coude so the peples herte embrace,  
 That eche hire loveth that loketh on hire face.

Not only of Saluces in the toun  
 Published was the bountee of hire name, 8291

But eke beside in many a regioun, 8292  
 If on saith wel, another saith the same :  
 So spredeth of hire hiē bountee the fame,  
 That men and women, yong as wel as old,  
 Gon to Saluces upon hire to behold.

Thus Walter lowly, nay but really,  
 Wedded with fortunat honestetee,  
 In Goddes pees liveth ful esily 8299  
 At home, and grace ynough outward had he ;  
 And for he saw that under low degree  
 Was honest vertue hid, the peple him held  
 A prudent man, and that is seen ful seld.

Not only this Grisildis thurgh hire wit  
 Coude all the fete of wify homlinesse,  
 But eke whan that the cas required it, 8306  
 Thē comune profit coude she redresse :  
 Ther n'as discord, rancour, ne hevinesse  
 In all the lond, that she ne cotde appese,  
 And wisely bring hem all in hertes ese.

Though that hire husband absent were or non,  
 If gentilmen, or other of that contree  
 Were wroth, she wolde briden hem at on,  
 So wise and ripe wordes hadde she, 8314

And jugement of so gret equitee, 8315  
 That she from heven sent was, as men wend,  
 Peple to save, and every wrong to amend.

Not longe time after that this Grisilde  
 Was wedded, she a doughter hath ybore,  
 All had hire lever han borne a knave child :  
 Glad was the markis and his folk therfore,  
 For though a maiden childe come all before, 8322  
 She may unto a knave child atteine  
 By likelyhed, sin she n'is not barreine.

*Pars tertia.*

Ther fell, as it befalleth times mo,  
 Whan that this childe had souked but a throwe,  
 This markis in his herte longed so 8327  
 To tempt his wif, hire sadnesse for to knowe,  
 That he ne might out of his herte throwe  
 This marveillous desir his wif to assay,  
 Needles, God wot, he thought hire to affray.

He had assaied hire ynough before,  
 And found hire ever good, what nedeth it  
 Hire for to tempt, and alway more and more ?  
 Though som men praise it for a subtil wit,  
 But as for me, I say that evil it sit 8336

To assay a wif whan that it is no nede, 8337  
 And putten hire in anguish and in drede.

For which this markis wrought in this manere ;  
 He came a-night alone ther as she lay  
 With sterne face, and with ful trouble chere,  
 And sayde thus ; Grisilde, (quod he) that day.  
 That I you toke out of your poure array,  
 And put you in estat. of high noblesse, 8344  
 Ye han it not forgotten, as I gesse.

I say, Grisilde, this present dignitee,  
 In which that I have put you, as I trow,  
 Maketh you not forgetful for to be  
 That I you toke in poure estat ful low,  
 For ony wele ye mote yourselven know.  
 Take hede of every word that I you say, 8351  
 Ther is no wight that hereth it but we tway.

Ye wote yourself wel how that ye came here  
 .Into this hous, it is not long ago,  
 And though to me ye be right lefe and dere,  
 Unto my gentils ye be nothing so :  
 They say, to hem it is gret shame and wo  
 For to be suggetes, and ben in servage  
 To thee, that borne art of a smal linage. 8359

And namely sin thy doughter was ybore, 8350  
 These wordes han they spoken douteles,  
 But I desire, as I have don before,  
 To live my lif with hem in rest and pees :  
 I may not in this cas be reccheles ;  
 I mote do with thy doughter for the best,  
 Not as I wold, but as my gentils lest.

And yet, God wote, this is ful loth to me : 8367  
 But natheles withouten youre weting  
 I wol nought do, but thus wol I (quod he)  
 That ye to me assenten in this thing.  
 Shew now youre patience in youre werking,  
 That ye me hight and swore in youre village  
 The day that maked was our mariage.

Whan she had herd all this, she not ameved 8374  
 Neyther in word, in chere, ne countenance,  
 (For as it semed, she was not agreved)  
 She sayde ; Lord, all lith in your plesance,  
 My child and I, with hertely obeisance  
 Ben youres all, and ye may save or spill,  
 Your owen thing : werketh after your will.

Ther may no thing, so God my soule save,  
 Like unto you, that may displesen me : 8382

Ne I desire nothing for to have,  
 Ne drede for to lese, sauf only ye:  
 This will is in myn herte, and ay shal be,  
 No length of time, or deth may this deface,  
 Ne change my corage to an other place.

8383

Glad was this markis for hire answering,  
 But yet he feined as he were not so,  
 Al dreary was his chere and his loking,  
 Whan that he shuld out of the chambre go,  
 Sone after this, a furlong way or two,  
 He prively hath told all his entent  
 Unto a man, and to his wif him sent.

8390

A maner sergeant was this prive man,  
 The which he faithful often founden had  
 In thinges gret, and eke swiche folk wel can  
 Doñ execution on thinges bad:  
 The lord knew wel, that he him loved and drad.  
 And whan this sergeant wist his lordes will,  
 Into the chambre he stalked him ful still.

8397

Madame, he sayd, ye mote foryeve it me,  
 Though I do thing, to which I am constreined:  
 Ye ben so wise, that right wel knowen ye,  
 That lordes hestes may not ben yfeined,

8405

They may wel be bewailed and complained, 8406  
 But men mote nedes to hir lust obey,  
 And so wol I, ther n'is no more to say.

This child I am commanded for to take.  
 And spake no more, but out the child he hent,  
 Despitously, and gan a chere to make,  
 As though he wold have slain it, or he went.  
 Grisildis most al suffer and al consent : 8413  
 And as a lambe, she sitteth meke and still,  
 And let this cruel sergeante do his will.

Suspecious was the diffame of this man,  
 Suspect his face, suspect his word also,  
 Suspect the time in which he this began :  
 Alas ! hire doughter, that she loved so,  
 She wende he wold han slaien it right tho, 8420  
 But natheles she neither wept ne siked,  
 Conforming hire to that the markis liked.

But at the last to speken she began,  
 And mekely she to the sergeante praid  
 (So as he was a worthy gentil man)  
 That she might kisse hire child, or that it deid :  
 And in hire barme this litel child she leid,  
 With ful sad face, and gan the child to blisse,  
 And lulled it, and after gan it kisse. 8429

And thus she sayd in hire benigne vois : 8430  
 Fareweļ, my child, I shal thee never see,  
 But sin I have thee marked with the crois,  
 Of thilke fader yblessed mote thou be,  
 That for us died upon a crois of tree :  
 Thy soule, litel child, I him betake,  
 For this night shalt thou dien for my sake.

I trow that to a norice in this cas 8437  
 It had ben hard this routhe for to see:  
 Wel might a moder than han cried alas,  
 But natheles so sad stedfast was she,  
 That she endured all adversitee,  
 And to the sergeant mekely she sayde,  
 Have here agē your litel yonge mayde,

Goth now (quod she) and doth my lordes hest :  
 And o thing wold I pray you of your grace, 8445  
 But if my lord forbade you at the lest,  
 Burieth this litel body in som place,  
 That bestes ne no briddes it to-race.  
 But he no word to that purpos wold say,  
 But toke the child and went upon his way.

This sergeant came unto his lord again,  
 And of Grisildes wordes and hire chere 8452



He told him point for point, in short and plain, 8453  
 And him presented with his daughter dere  
 Somwhat this lord hath routhe in his manere,  
 But natheles his purpos held he still,  
 As lordes don, when they wol have hir will,

And bad this sergeant that he prively  
 Shulde this child ful softe wind and wrappe,  
 With alle circumstances tendrely, 8460  
 And carry it in a cofre, or in a lappe ;  
 But upon peine his hed of for to swappe  
 That no man shulde know of his entent,  
 Ne whens he came, ne whider that he went ;

But at Boloigne, unto his suster dere,  
 That thilke time of Pavie was countesse,  
 He shuld it take, and shew hire this matere, 8467  
 Beseching hire to don hire businesse  
 This child to fostren in all gentillesse,  
 And whos child that it was he bade hire hide  
 From every wight, for ought that may betide.

This sergeant goth, and hath fulfilde this thing.  
 But to this marquis now retorne we ;  
 For now goth he ful fast imagining,  
 If by his wives chere he mighte see, 8475

Or by hire wordes apperceiue, that she  
 Were changed, but he never could hire finde,  
 But ever in on ylike sad and kinde.

-8467

As glad, as humble, as besy in service  
 And eke in loye, as she was wont to be,  
 Was she to him, in every maner wise;  
 Ne of hire doughter not a word spake she:  
 Non accident for non adversitee  
 Was seen in hire, ne never hire doughters name  
 Ne nevened she, for earnest ne for game.

8468

*Pars quarta.*

In this estat ther passed ben foure yere  
 Er she with childe was, but, as God wold,  
 A knave childe she bare by this Waltere  
 Ful gracious, and fair for to behold:  
 And whan that folk it to his fader told,  
 Not only he, but all his contree mery  
 Was for this childe, and God they thonke and hery.

8488

Whan it was two yere old, and from the brest  
 Departed of his nørice, on a day  
 This markis caughte yet another lest  
 To tempte his wif yet ofter, if he may.

8496

O! nedeles was she tempted in assay. . . . 8497  
 But wedded men ne connen no mesure;  
 Whan that they finde a patient creature.

Wif, quod this markis, ye han herd or this  
 My peple sikely beren our mariage,  
 And namely sin my sone yboren is,  
 Now is it werse than ever in al our age:  
 The murmur sleth myn herte and my corage, 8504  
 For to myn eres cometh the vois so smerte,  
 That it wel nie destroyed hath myn herte.

Now say they thus, whan Walter is agon,  
 Than shal the blood of Janicle succede,  
 And ben our lord, for other han we non:  
 Swiche wordes sayn my peple, it is no drede.  
 Wel ought I of swiche murmur' taken hede, 8511<sup>r</sup>  
 For certainly I drede al swiche sentence,  
 Though they not plainen in myn audience.

I wolde live in pees, if that I might:  
 Wherefore I am disposed utterly,  
 As I his suster served er by night,  
 Right so thinke I to serve him prively.  
 This warne I you, that ye not sodenly  
 Out of yourself for no wo shuld outraie,  
 Beth patient, and therof I you praie. 8520

I have, quod she, sayd thus and ever shal, 8521  
 I wol no thing, ne n'ill no thing certain,  
 But as you list : not greveth me at al,  
 Though that my doughter and my sone be slain  
 At your commandement : that is to sain,  
 I have not had no part of children twein,  
 But first sikenesse, and after wo and peine.

Ye ben my lord, doth with your owen thing 8528  
 Right as you list, asketh no rede of me :  
 For as I left at home al my clothing  
 Whan I came first to you, right so (quod she)  
 Left I my will and al my libertee,  
 And toke your clothing : wherfore I you prey,  
 Doth your plesance, I wol youre lust obey.

And certes, if I hadde prescience 8535  
 Your will to know, er ye your lust me told,  
 I wold it do withouten negligence :  
 But now I wote your lust, and what ye wold,  
 All your plesance ferme and stable I hold,  
 For wist I that my deth might do you ese,  
 Right gladly wold I dien, you to plese.

Deth may not maken no comparisoun  
 Unto your love. And whan this markis say 8543

The constance of his wif, he cast adoun 8544  
His eyen two, and wondreth how she may  
In patience suffer al this array :  
And forth he goth with drery contenance,  
But to his herte it was ful gret plesance.

. This ugly sergeant in the same wise  
That he hire doughter caughte, right so he  
(Or werse, if men can any werse devise) 8551  
Hath hent hire sone, that ful was of beautee :  
And ever in on so patient was she,  
That she no chere made of hevinesse,  
But kist hire sone and after gan it blesse.

Save this she praied him, if that he might,  
Hire litel sone he wold in erthe grave,  
His tendre limmes, delicat to sight, 8558  
Fro foules and fro bestes for to save.  
But she non answer of him mighte have,  
He went his way, as him no thing ne rought,  
But to Boloigne he tendrely it brought.

This markis wondreth ever lenger the more  
Upon hire patience, and if that he  
Ne hadde sothly knowen therbefore,  
That parfitly hire children loved she,  
He wold han wend that of som subtiltee 8567

And of malice, or for cruel corage,  
That she had suffred this with sad visage.

8568

But wel he knew, that next himself; certain  
She loved hire children best in every wise.  
But now of women wold I asken fayn,  
If thise assaies mighten not suffise ;  
What coud a sturdy husbond more devise  
To preve hire wifhood, and hire stedfastnesse,  
And he continuing ever in sturdinesse ?

8575

But ther ben folk of swiche condition,  
That, whan they han a certain purpos take,  
They can not stint of hir intention,  
But, right as they were bounden to a stake,  
They wol not of hir firste purpos slake :  
Right so this markis fully hath purposed  
To tempt his wif, as he was first disposed

8582

He waiteth, if by word or contenance  
That she to him was changed of corage :  
But never coud he finden variance,  
She was ay on in herte and in visage,  
And ay the further that she was in age,  
The mote trewe (if that it were possible)  
She was to him in love, and more penible.

8590

For which it semed thus, that of hem two 8591  
 Ther was but o will ; for as Walter lest,  
 The same lust was hire plesance also ;  
 And God be thanked, all fell for the best.  
 She shewed wel, for no worldly unrest  
 A wif, as of hireself, no thing ne sholde  
 Wille in effect, but as hire husband wolde.

The scandre of Walter wonder wide spradde, 8598  
 That of a cruel herte he wikkedly,  
 For he a poure woman wedded hadde,  
 Hath murdred both his children prively :  
 Swich murmur was among hem comunly.  
 No wonder is : for to the peples ere  
 Ther came no word, but that they murdred were.

For which ther as his peple therbefore 8605  
 Had loved him wel, the scandre of his diffame  
 Made hem that they him hateden therefore :  
 To ben a murdrour is an hateful name.  
 But natheles, for ernest ne for game,  
 He of his cruel purpos n'olde stente,  
 To tempt his wif was sette all his entente.

Whan that his doughter twelf yere was of age,  
 He to the court of Rome, in subtil wise 8613

Enformed of his will, sent his message, 8614  
 Commanding him, swiche billes to devise,  
 As to his cruel purpos may suffise,  
 How that the pope, as for his peples rest,  
 Bade him to wed aanother, if him lest.

I say he bade, they shulden contrefete.  
 The popes bulles, making mention  
 That he hath leve his firste wif to lete; 8621  
 As by the popes dispensation,  
 To stinten rancour and dissension  
 Betwix his peple and him : thus spake the bull,  
 The which they han publisshed at the full:

The rude peple, as no wonder is,  
 Wenden ful wel, that it had ben right so :  
 But whan thise tidings came to Grisildis, 8628  
 I deme that hire herte was ful of wo ;  
 But she ylike sad for evermo  
 Disposed was, this humble creature,  
 The adversitee of fortune al to endure ;

Abiding ever his lust and his plesance,  
 To whom that she was yeven, herte and al,  
 As to hire veray worldly suffisance.  
 But shortly if this storie tell I shal, 8636



This markis writen hath in special 8637  
 A lettre, in which he sheweth his entente,  
 And secretly he to Boloigne is sente,

To the erl of Pavie, which that hadde tho  
 Wedded his suster, prayed he specially  
 To bringen home agein his children two  
 In honourable estat al openly :  
 But o thing he him prayed utterly, 8644  
 That he to no wight, though men wold enquere,  
 Shulde not tell whos children that they were,

But say, the maiden shuld ywedded be  
 Unto the markis of Saluces anon.  
 And as this erl was prayed, so did he, \*  
 For at day sette he on his way is gon  
 Toward Saluces, and lordes many on 8651  
 In rich arraie, this maiden for to gide,  
 Hire yonge brother riding hire beside.

Arraied was toward hire mariage  
 This fresshe maiden, ful of gemmes clere,  
 Hire brother, which that seven yere was of age,  
 Arraied eke ful fresh in his manere :  
 And thus in gret noblesse and with glad chere 8658

Toward Saluces shaping hir journey  
 • Fro day to day they riden in hir way. 8659

*Pars quinta.*

Among al this, after his wicked usage,  
 This markis yet his wif to tempten more  
 To the uttereste prefe of hire corage,  
 Fully to have experiēce and lore, 8664  
 If that she were as stedefast as before,  
 He on a day in open audience  
 Ful boistously hath said hire this sentence :

Certes, Grisilde, I had ynough plesance  
 To han you to my wif, for your goodnesse,  
 • And for your trouthe, and for your obeysance,  
 Not for your linage, ne for your richesse, 8671  
 But now know I in veray sothfastnesse,  
 That in gret lordship; if I me wel avise,  
 Ther is gret servitude in sondry wise.

I may not don, as every ploughman may :  
 My peple me constreineth for to take  
 Another wif, and crien day by day ;  
 And eke the pope rancour for to slake  
 Consenteth it, that dare I undertake : 8679

And trewely, thus moche I wol you say, 8680  
 My newe wif is coming by the way.

Be strong of herte, and voide anon hire place,  
 And thilke dower that ye broughten me  
 Take it agen, I grant it of my grace.  
 Returneth to your fadres hous, (quod he)  
 No man may alway have prosperitee.  
 With even herte I rede you to endure 8687  
 The stroke of fortune, or of aventure.

And she agen answerd in patience:  
 My lord, quod she, I wote, and wist alway,  
 How that betwixen your magnificence  
 And my poverte no wight ne can ne may  
 Maken comparison, it is no nay;  
 I ne held me never digne in no manere 8694  
 To be your wif, ne yet your chamberere.

And in this hous, ther ye me lady made,  
 (The highe God take I for my witnesse,  
 And all so wisly he my soule glad)  
 I never held me lady ne maistresse,  
 But humble servant to your worthinesse,  
 And ever shal, while that my lif may dure,  
 Aboven every worldly creature.. 8702

That ye so longe of your bénignitee 8703  
 Han holden me in honour and nobley,  
 Whéras I was not worthy for to be,  
 That thanke I God and you, to whom I prey  
 Foryelde it you, ther is no more to sey :  
 Unto my fader gladly wol I wende,  
 And with him dwell unto my lives ende ;

Ther I was fostred of a childe ful smal, 8710  
 Til I be ded my lif ther wol I lede,  
 A widew clene in body, herte and al.  
 For sith I yave to you my maidenhede,  
 And am your trewe wif, it is no drede,  
 God shilde swiche a lordes wif to take  
 Another man to husbond or to make.

And of your newe wif, God of his grace 8717  
 So graunte you wele and prosperite :  
 For I wol gladly yelden hire my place,  
 In which that I was blisful wont to be.  
 For sith it liketh you, my lord, (quod she)  
 That whilom weren all myn hertes rest,  
 That I shal gon, I wol go whan you lest.

But ther as ye me profre swiche dowaire 8725  
 As I first brought, it is wel in my mind,

It were my wretched clothes, nothing faire,  
 The which to me were hard now for to find.  
 O goode God! how gentil and how kind  
 Ye semed by your speche and your visage,  
 The day that maked was oure marriage!

8726

But soth is said, algate I find it trewe,  
 For in effect it preved is on me;  
 Love is not old, as whan that it is newe.  
 But certes, lord, for non adversitee  
 To dien in this cas, it shal not be  
 That ever in word or werke I shal repent,  
 That I you yave min herte in hole entent.

8733

My lord, ye wote, that in my fadres place  
 Ye dide me stripe out of my poure wede,  
 And richely ye clad me of your grace;  
 To you brought I nought elles out of drede,  
 But faith, and nakednesse, and maidenhede;  
 And here agen your clothing I restore,  
 And eke your wedding ring for evermore.

8740

The remenant of your jeweles redy be  
 Within your chambre, I dare it safly sain:  
 Naked out of my fadres hous (quod she)  
 I came, and naked I mote turne again.

8748

All your plesance wolde ·I folwe fain : 8749  
 But yet I hope it be not your entent,  
 That I smokles out of your paleis went.

Ye coude not do so dishonest a thing,  
 That thilke wombe, in which your children lay,  
 Shulde before the peple, in my walking,  
 Be seen al bare : wherfore I you pray  
 Let me not like a worme go by the way : 8756  
 Remembre you, min owen lord so dere,  
 I was your wif, though I unworthy were.

Wherfore in guerdon of my maidenhede,  
 Which that I brought and not agen I bere,  
 As vouchesauf to yeve me to my mede  
 But swiche a smok as I was wont to were,  
 That I therwith may wrie the wombe of hire 8763  
 That was your wif : and here I take my leve  
 Of you, min owen lord, lest I you greve.

The smok, quod he, that thou hast on thy bake,  
 Let it be still, and bere it forth with thee.  
 But wel unnethes thilke word he spake,  
 But went his way for routhe and for pitee.  
 Before the folk hireselven stripeth she,  
 And in hire smok, with foot and hed al bare,  
 Toward hire fadres hous forth is she fare. 8772

The folk hire folwen weping in hir wey, 8773  
And fortune ay they cursen as they gon :  
But she fro weping kept hire eyen drey,  
Ne in this time word ne spake she non.  
Hire fader, that this tiding herd anon,  
Curseth the day and time, that nature  
Shope him to ben a lives creature.

For out of doute this olde poure man 8780  
Was ever in suspect of hire mariage :  
For ever he demed, sin it first began,  
That whan the lord fulfilled had his corage,  
Him wolde thinke it were a disparage  
To his estat, so lowe for to alight,  
And voiden hire as sone as ever he might.

Agein his daughter hastily goth he, 8787  
(For he by noise of folk knew hire coming)  
And with hire olde cote, as it might be,  
He covereth hire ful sorwefully weping :  
But on hire body might he if not bring,  
For rude was the cloth, and more of age  
By daies fele than at hire mariage.

Thus with hire fader for a certain space  
Dwelleth this flour of wifly patience, 8795

That nother by hire wordes né hire face, 8796  
 Before the folk, ne eke in hir absence,  
 Ne shewed she that hire was don offence,  
 Ne of hire high estat no remembrance  
 Ne hadde she, as by hire contenance.

No wonder is, for in hire gret estat  
 Hire gost was ever in pleine humilitee ;  
 No tendre mouth, no herte delicat, 8803  
 No pompe, no semblant of realtee ;  
 But ful of patient benignitee,  
 Discrete, and prideles, ay honourable ;  
 And to hire husband ever meke and stable.

Men speke of Job, and most for his humblesse,  
 As clerkes, whan hem list, can wel endite,  
 Namely of men, but as in sothfastnesse, 8810  
 Though clerkes preisen women but a lite,  
 Ther can no man in humblesse him acquite  
 As woman can, ne can be half so trewe  
 As women ben, but it be falle of newe.

*Pars sexta.*

Fro Boloigne is this erl of Pavie come,  
 Of which the fame up sprang to more and lesse : 8816



And to the peples eres all and some 8817  
 Was couth eke, that a newe markisesse  
 He with him brought, in swiche pomp and richesse,  
 That never was ther seen with mannes eye  
 So noble array in al West Lumbardie.

The markis, which that shope and knew all this,  
 Er that this erl was come, sent his message  
 For thilke poure sely Grisildis ; 8824  
 And she with humble herte and glad visage,  
 Not with no swollen thought in hire corage,  
 Came at his hest, and on hire knees hire sette,  
 And reverently and wisely she him grette.

Grisilde, (quod he) my will is utterly,  
 This maiden, that shal wedded be to me,  
 Received be to-morwe as really 8831  
 As it possible is in myn hous to be :  
 And eke that every wight in his degree  
 Have his estat in sitting and service,  
 And high plesance, as I can best devise.

I have no woman suffisant certain  
 The chambres for to array in ordinance  
 After my lust, and therefore wolde I fain,  
 That thin weré all swiche manere governance : 8839

Thou knowest eke of old all my plesance ; 8840  
 Though thin array he bad, and evil besey,  
 Do thou thy devoir at the leste wey.

Not only, lord, that I am glad (quod she)  
 To don your lust, but I desire also  
 You for to serve and plesse in my degree,  
 Withouten fainting, and shal evermo :  
 Ne never for no wele, ne for no wo, 8847  
 Ne shal the gost within myn herte stente  
 To love you best with all my trewe entente.

And with that word she gan the hous. to dight,  
 And tables for to sette, and beddes make,  
 And peined hire to dōn all that she might,  
 Praying the chambereres for Goddes sake  
 To hasten hem, and faste swepe and shake, 8854  
 And she the moste serviceable of all  
 Hath every chambre arraied, and his hall.

Abouten undern gan this erl alight,  
 That with him brought thise noble children twey ;  
 For which the peple ran to see the sight  
 Of hir array, so richely besey :  
 And than at erst amonges hem they sey,  
 That Walter was no fool, though that him lest  
 To change his wif ; for it was for the best. 8863

For she is fairer, as they demen all, 8864  
Than is Grisilde, and more tendre of age,  
And fairer fruit betwene hem shulde fall,  
And more plesant for hire high linage :  
Hire brother eke so faire was of visage,  
That hem to seen the peple hath caught plesance,  
Commending now the markis governance.

Q stormy peple, unsad and ever untrewē, 8871  
And undiscrete, and changing as a fane,  
Delighting ever in rombel that is newe,  
For like the mōne waxen ye and wane :  
Ay ful of clapping, dere ynough a jane,  
Your dome is fals, your constance evil preveth,  
A ful gret fool is he that on' you leveth.

Thus saiden sade folk in that citee, 8878  
Whan that the peple gased up and doun :  
For they were glad, right for the noveltee,  
To have a newe lady of hir toun.  
No more of this make I now mentioun,  
But to Grisilde agen I wol me dresse,  
And telle hire constance, and hire besnesse.

Ful besy was Grisilde in every thing,  
That to the feste was appertinent ; 8886

Right naught was she abaist, of hire clothing, 8887  
 Though it were rude, and somdel eke to-rent,  
 But with glad chere to the yate is went  
 With other folk, to grete the markisessé,  
 And after that doth forth hire besinesse.

With so glad chere his gestes she receiveth,  
 And conningly everich in his degree,  
 That no defaute no man apperceiveth, 8894  
 But ay they wondren what she mighte be,  
 That in so poure array was for to see,  
 And coude swiche honour and reveréce,  
 And worthily they preisen hire prudence.

In all thise mene while she ne stent  
 This maide and eke hire brother to commend  
 With all hire herte in ful benigne entent, 8901  
 So wel, that no man coud hire preise amend :  
 But at the last whan that thise lordes wend  
 To sitten doun to mete, he gan to call  
 Grisilde, as she was besy in the hall.

Grisilde, (quod he, as it were in his play)  
 How liketh thee my wif, and hire beautee ?  
 Right wel, my lord, quod she, for in good fay,  
 A fairer saw I never non than she : 8909

I pray to God yeve you prosperitee ;  
 And so I hope, that he wol to you send.  
 Plesance ynough unto your lives end. 8310

O thing beseche I you and warne also,  
 That ye ne prikke with no turmenting  
 This tendre maiden, as ye han do mo :  
 For she is fostred in hire norishing  
 More tendrely, and to my supposing 8917  
 She mighte not adversitee endure,  
 As coude a poure fostred creature.

And whan this Walter saw hire patience,  
 Hire glade chere, and no malicé at all,  
 And he so often hadde hire don offence,  
 And she ay sade and constant as a wall,  
 Continuing ever hire innocence over all, 8924  
 This sturdy markis gan his herte dresse  
 To rewe upon hire wify stedefastnesse.

This is ynough, Grisilde min, quod he,  
 Be now no more agast, ne evil apaid,  
 I have thy faith and thy benignitee,  
 As wel as ever woman was, assaid  
 In gret estat, and pourelich arraid :  
 Now know I, dere wif, thy stedefastnesse,  
 And hire in armes toke, and gan to kesse. 8935

And she for wonder toke of it no kepe ;  
 She herde not what thing he to hire said :  
 She ferde as she had stert out of a slepe,  
 Til she out of hire masednesse abraid.  
 Grisilde, quod he, by God that for us deid,  
 Thou art my wif, non other I ne have,  
 Ne never had, as God my soule save.

8934

This is thy daughter, which thou hast supposed 8941  
 To be my wif ; that other faithfully  
 Shal be min heir, as I have ay disposed ;  
 Thou bare hem of thy body trewely :  
 At Boloigne have I kept hem prively :  
 Take hem agen, for now maist thou not say,  
 That thou hast lorn non of thy children tway.

And folk, that otherwise han said of me,  
 I warne hem wel, that I have don this dede  
 For no malice, ne for no crueltee,  
 But for to assay in thee thy womanhede :  
 And not to slee my children (God forbede)  
 But for to kepe hem prively and still,  
 Til I thy purpos knew, and all thy will.

8948

Whan she this herd aswoune doun she falleth  
 For pitous joye, and after hire swouning  
 She both hire yonge children to hire calleth,

8987

And in hire armes pitously weping 8958  
 Embraceth hem, and tendrely kissing  
 Ful like a moder with hire salte teres  
 She bathed both hir visage and hir heres.

O, which a pitous thing it was to see  
 Hire swouning, and hire humble vois to here!  
*Grand mércy*, lord, God thank it you (quod she)  
 That ye han saved me my children dere: 8965  
 Now rekke I never to be ded right here,  
 Sin I stond in your love, and in your grace,  
 No force of deth, ne whan my spirit pace.

O tendre, o dere, o yonge children mine,  
 Your woful mother wened stedfastly,  
 That cruel houndes, or som foul vermine  
 Had eten you; but God of his mercy, 8972  
 And your benigne fader tendrely  
 Hath don you kepe: and in that same stound  
 Al sodenly she swapt adoun to ground.

And in hire swough so sadly holdeth she  
 Hire children two, whan she gan hem embrace,  
 That with gret sleight and gret difficultee  
 The children from hire arm they gan arrace  
 O! many a tere on many a pitous face 8980

Doun ran of hem that stoden hire beside,  
Unnethe abouten hire might they abide.

8981

Walter hire gladeth, and hire sorwe slaketh,  
She riseth up abashed from hire trance,  
And every wight hire joye and feste maketh,  
Til she hath caught agen hire contenance.  
Walter hire doth so faithfully plesance,  
That it was deintee for to seen the chere  
Betwix hem two, sin they ben met in fere.

8988

Thise ladies, whan that they hir time sey,  
Han taken hire, and into chambre gon,  
And stripen hire out of hire rude arrey,  
And in a cloth of gold that brighte shone,  
With a coroune of many a riche stone  
Upon hire hed, they into hall hire broughte :  
And ther she was honoured as hire ought.

8995

Thus hath this pitous day a blisful end ;  
For every man, and woman, doth his might  
This day in mirth and revel to dispend,  
Til on the welkin shone the sterres bright :  
For more solempne in every mannes sight  
This feste was, and greter of costage,  
Than was the revel of hire mariage.

9003



Ful many a yere in high prosperitee 9004  
Liven these two in concord and in rest,  
And richely his doughter married he  
Unto a lord, on of the worthiest  
Of all Itaille, and than in pees and rest  
His wives fader in his court he kepeth,  
Til that the soule out of his body crepeth.

His sone succedeth in his heritage, 9011  
In rest and pees, after his fadres day :  
And fortunat was eke in mariage,  
Al put he not his wif in gret assay :  
This world is not so strong, it is no nay,  
As it hath ben in olde times yore,  
And herkneth, what this auctour saith therefore.

This story is said, not for that wives shuld 9018  
Folwe Grisilde, as in humilitee,  
For it were importable, tho they wold ;  
But for that every wight in his degree  
Shulde be constant in adversitee,  
As was Grisilde, therefore Petrark writeth  
This storie, which with high stile he enditeth.

For sith a woman was so patient  
Unto a mortal man, wel more we ought 9026

Receiven all in gree that God us sent. 9027  
 For gret skill is he preve that he wrought :  
 But he ne tempteth no man that he bought,  
 As saith seint Jame, if ye his pistell rede ;  
 He preveth folk al day, it is no drede :

And suffreth us, as for our exercise,  
 With sharpe scourges of adversitee  
 Ful often to be bete in sondry wise ; 9034  
 Not for to know our will, for certes he,  
 Or we were borne, knew all our freeletee ;  
 And for our best is all his governance ;  
 Let us than live in vertuous suffrance.

But o word, lordings, herkeneth, or I go :  
 It were ful hard to finden now adayes  
 In all a toun Grisildes threé or two : 9041  
 For if that they were put to swiche assayes,  
 The gold of hem hath now so bad alayes  
 With bras, that though the coine be faire at eye,  
 It wolde rather brast atwo than plie.

For which here, for the wives love of Bathe,—  
 Whos lif and al hire secte God maintene  
 In high maistrie, and elles were it scathe,—  
 I wol with lusty herte fresshe and grene, 9049



Say you a song to gladen you, I wene :  
 And let us stint of earnestful matere.  
 Herkneþ my song, that saith in this manere. 9050

Grisilde is ded, and eke hire patience,  
 And both at ones buried in Itaille :  
 For which I orie in open audience,  
 No wedded man so hardy be to assaille  
 His wives patience, in trust to find 9057  
 Grisildes, for in certain he shal faille.

O noble wives, ful of high prudence,  
 Let non humilitee your tonges naile :  
 Ne let no clerk have cause or diligence  
 To write of you a storie of swiche mervaille,  
 As of Grisildis patient and kinde,  
 Lest Chichevache you swalwe in hire entraille. 9064

Folweth ecco, that holdeth no silence,  
 But ever answereth at the countretaille :  
 Beth not bedaffed for your innocence,  
 But sharply taketh on you the governaille :  
 Emprinteth wel this lesson in your minde,  
 For comun profit, sith it may availle.

Ye archewives, stondesth ay at defence, 9071

Sin ye be strong, as is a gret camaille, 9072  
 Ne suffreth not, that men do you offence.  
 And sclendre wives, feble as in bataille,  
 Beth egre as is a tigre yond in Inde ;  
 Ay clappeth as a mill, I you counsaile.

Ne drede hem not, doth hem no reverence,  
 For though thin husband armed be in maille,  
 The arwes of thy crabbed eloquence 9079  
 Shal perce his brest, and eke his aventaille :  
 In jalousie I rede eke thou him binde,  
 And thou shalt make him couche as doth a quaille.

If thou be faire, ther folk ben in presence  
 Shew thou thy visage, and thin apparaille :  
 If thou be foule, be free of thy dispence,  
 To get thee frendes ay do thy travaille : 9085  
 Be ay of chere as light as lefe on linde,  
 And let him care, and wepe, and wringe, and waille.

### THE MARCHANTES PROLOGUE.

WEPING and wailing, care and other sorwe  
 I have ynough, on even and on morwe,  
 Quod the marchant, and so have other mo,  
 That wedded ben ; I trowe that it be so : 9092

For wel I wot it fareth so by me. 9093

I have a wif, the werste that may be,  
 For though the fend to hire' ycoupled were,  
 She wolde him overmatche I dare wel swere.  
 What shulde I you reherse in special  
 Hire high malice? she is a shrewd al.

Ther is a long and a large difference  
 Betwix Grisildes grete patience,  
 And of my wif the passing crueltee. 9101

Were I unbounden, all so mote I the,  
 I wolde never eft comen in the snare.  
 We wedded men live in sorwe and care,  
 Assay it who so wol, and he shal finde  
 That I say soth, by seint Thomas of Inde,  
 As for the more part, I say not alle;  
 God shilde that it shulde so befall.

A, good sire hoste, I have ywedded be 9109  
 Thise monethes two, and more not parde;  
 And yet I trowe that he, that all his lif  
 Wifles hath ben, though that men wolde him rife  
 Into the herte, ne coude in no manere  
 Tellen so much sorwe, as I you here  
 Coud tellen of my wives cursednesse.

Now, quod our hoste, marchant, so God you blesse,  
 Sin ye so mochel knowen of that art,  
 Ful hertely I pray you tell us part. 9118

Gladly, quod he, but of min owen sore 9119  
 For sory herte I tellen may no more.

### THE MARCHANTES TALE.

WHILOM ther was dwelling in Lumbarde  
 A worthy knight, that born was at Pavie  
 In which he lived in gret prosperitee ; 9123  
 And sixty yere a wifes man was he,  
 And folwed ay his bodily delit  
 On women, ther as was his appetit,  
 As don thise fooles that ben seculere.  
 And whan that he was passed sixty yere,  
 Were it for holinesse or for dotage,  
 I cannot sain, but swiche a gret corage  
 Hadde this knight to ben a wedded man, 9131  
 That day and night he doth all that he can  
 To espie, wher that he might wedded be ;  
 Praying our lord to granten him, that he  
 Mighte ones knowen of that blisful lif,  
 That is betwix an husbond and his wif,  
 And for to live under that holy bond,  
 With which God firste man and woman bond.  
 Non other lif (said he) is worth a bene :  
 For wedlok is so esy and so clene, 9140

That in this world it is a paradise. 9141

Thus saith this olde knight, that was so wise.

And certainly, as soth as God is king,  
To take a wif, it is a glorious thing,  
And namely whan a man is old and hore,  
Than is a wif the fruit of his tresore ;  
Than shuld he take a yong wif and a faire,  
On which he might engendren him an heire, .  
And lede his lif in joye and in solas, 9149

Wheras these bachelers singen alas,  
Whan that they finde any adversitee  
In love, which n'is but childish vanitee.  
And trewely it sit wel to be so,  
That bachelers have often peine and wo :  
On brotel ground they bilde, and brotelnesse  
They finden, whan they wenen sikernesse :  
They live but as a bird or as a beste, 9157

In libertee and under non areste,  
Ther as a wedded man in his estat  
Liveth a lif blisful and ordinat,  
Under the yoke of mariage ybound :  
Wel may his herte in joye and blisse abound.  
For who can be so buxom as a wif ?  
Who is so trewe and eke so ententif  
To kepe him, sike and hole, as is his make ?  
For wele or wo she n'll him not forsake : 9166

She n'is not wery him to love and serve, 9167  
 Though that he lie bedrede til that he sterue.

And yet som clerkes sain, it is not so,  
 Of which he Theophrast is on of tho :  
 What force though Theophrast list for to lie ?

Ne take no wif, quod he, for husbandrie,  
 As for to spare in household thy dispence :  
 A trewe servant doth more diligence  
 Thy good to kepe, than doth thin owen wif, 9175  
 For she wol claimen half part al hire lif.  
 And if that thou be sike, so God me save,  
 Thy veray frendes or a trewe knave  
 Wol kepe thee bet than she, that waiteth ay  
 After thy good, and hath don many a day.

This sentence, and an hundred thinges werse  
 Writeth this man ther God his bones curse.  
 But take no kepe of al swiche vanitee, 9183  
 Defieth Theophrast, and herkeneth me.

A wif is Goddes yefte veraily ;  
 All other maner yeftes hardely,  
 As londes, rentes, pasture, or commune,  
 Or mebles, all ben yeftes of fortune,  
 That passen as a shadow on the wall :  
 But drede thou not, if plainly speke I shal,  
 A wif wol last and in thin hous endure,  
 Wel lenger than thee list paraventure. 9192



Mariage is a ful gret sacrament ;  
 He which that hath no wif I hold him shent ;  
 He liveth helples, and all desolat :  
 (I speke of folk in seculer estat)

And herkneþ why, I say not this for nought,  
 That woman is for mannes helpe ywrought.  
 The highe God, whan he had Adam maked,  
 And saw him al alone belly naked,  
 God of his grete goodnesse saide than ;  
 Let us now make an helpe unto this man  
 Like to himself, and than he made him Eve.

Here may ye see, and hereby may ye preve,  
 That a wif is mannes helpe and his comfort,  
 His paradis terrestre and his disport :  
 So buxom and so vertuous is she,  
 They mosten nedes live in unitee :  
 O flesh they ben, and o flesh, as I gesse,  
 Hath but on herte in wele and in distresse.

A wif? a! seinte Marie, *benedicite*,  
 How might a man have any adversite  
 That hath a wif? certes I cannot seye.  
 The blisse the which that is betwix hem tweye  
 Ther may no tonge telle or herte thinke.  
 If he be poure, she helpeth him to swinke ;  
 She kepeth his good, and wasteth never a del ;  
 All that hire husband doth, hire liketh wel ;

9193

9201

9209

9218

She saith not ones nay, whan he saith ye ; 9219  
 Do this, saith he ; al redy, sire, saith she.

O blisful ordre, o wedlok precious,  
 Thou art so mery, and eke so vertuous,  
 And so commended, and approved eke,  
 That every man that holt him worth a leke,  
 Upon his bare knées ought all his lif  
 Thanken his God, that him hath sent a wif,  
 Or elles pray to God him for to send 9227  
 A wif, to last untó his lives end.

For than his lif is set in sikernesse,  
 He may not be deceived, as I gesse,  
 So that he werche after his wives rede ;  
 Than may he boldly beren up his hede,  
 They ben so trewe, and therwithal so wise.  
 For which, if thou wilt werchen as the wise,  
 Do alway so, as women wol thee rede. 9235

Lo how that Jacob, as thise clerkes rede,  
 By good conseil of his mother Rebekke  
 Bounde the kiddes skin about his nekke ;  
 For which his fadrès benison he wan.

Lo Judith, as the storie eke tell can,  
 By good conseil she Goddes peple kept,  
 And slow him Holofernes while he slept.

Lo Abigail, by good conseil how she  
 Saved hire husband Nabal, whan that he 9244

Shuld han be slain. And loke, Hester also 9245  
 By good conseil delivered out of wo  
 The peple of God, and made him Mardochee  
 Of Assuere enhaused for to be.

Ther n'is no thing in gree superlatif  
 (As saith Senek) above an humble wif.  
 Suffer thy wives tonge, as Caton bit,  
 She shal command, and thou shalt suffren it,  
 And yet she wol obey of curtesie. 9253

A wif is keper of thin husbondrie :  
 Wel may the sike man bewaile and wepe,  
 Ther as ther is no wif the hous to kepe.  
 I warne thee, if wisely thou wilt werche,  
 Love wel thy wif, as Crist loveth his cherche :  
 If thou lovest thyself, love thou thy wif.  
 No man hateth his flesh, but in his lif  
 He fostreth it, and therefore bid I thee 9261  
 Cherish thy wif, or thou shalt never the.  
 Husbond and wif, what so men jape or play,  
 Of worldly folk holden the siker way :  
 They ben so knit, ther may non harm betide,  
 And namely upon the wives side.

For which this January, of whom I told,  
 Considered hath within his dayes old  
 The lusty lif, the vertuous quite,  
 That is in mariage hony-swete. 9270

And for his frendes on a day he sent  
To tellen hem th' effect of his entent.

9271

With face sad, his tale he hath hem told:  
He sayde, frendes, I am hore and old,  
And almost (God wot) on my pittes brinke,  
Upon my soule somewhat most I thinke.  
I have my body folily dispended,  
Blessed be God that it shal ben amended:  
For I wol ben certain a wedded man,  
And that anon in all the hast I can.  
Unto som maiden, faire and tendre of age,  
I pray you shapeth for my mariage  
All sodenly, for I wol not abide:  
And I wol fonde to espion on my side,  
To whom I may be wedded hastily.  
But for as moche as ye ben more than I,  
Ye shullen rather swiche a thing espion  
Than I, and wher me beste were to allien.

9279

9287

But o thing warn I you, my frendes dere,  
I wol non old wif han in no manere:  
She shal not passen twenty yere certain.  
Old fish and yonge flesh wold I have fain.  
Bet is (quod he) a pike than a pikerel,  
And bet than old beef is the tendre veel.  
I wol no woman thirty yere of age,  
It is but benestraw and gret forage.

9296

And eke thise olde widewes (God it wote) 9297  
 They connen so moch craft on Wades bote,  
 So mochel broken harm whan that hem lest,  
 That with hem shuld I never live in rest.  
 For sondry scoles maken subtil clerkes;  
 Woman of many scoles half a clerk is.  
 But certainly, a yong thing men may gie,  
 Right as men may warm wax with handes plie.  
 Wherefore I say you plainly in a clause, 9305  
 I wol non old wif han right for this cause.

For if so were I hadde swiche meschance,  
 That I in hire ne coude have no plesance,  
 Than shuld I lede my lif in avoutrie,  
 And so streight to the devil whan I die.  
 Ne children shuld I non upon hire geten :  
 Yet were me lever houndes had me eten,  
 Than that min heritage shulde fall 9313  
 In straunge hondes : and this I tell you all.  
 I dote not, I wot the cause why  
 Men shulden wedde : and furthermore wot I,  
 Ther speketh many a man of mariage,  
 That wot no more of it than wot my page,  
 For which causes a man shuld take a wif.  
 If he ne may not liven chast his lif,  
 Take him a wif with gret devotion,  
 Because of leful procreation 9322

Of children, to the honour of God above, 9323  
 And not only for paramour or loye;  
 And for they shulden lecherie eschue,  
 And yeld hir dette whan that it is due :  
 Or for that eche of hem shuld helpen other  
 In meschefe, as a suster shal the brother,  
 And live in chastitee ful holily.

But, sires, (by your leve) that am not I,  
 For God be thanked, I dare make avaunt, 9331  
 I fele my limmes stark and suffisant  
 To don all that a man belongeth to :  
 I wot myselfen best what I may do.  
 Though I be hoor, I fare as doth a tre,  
 That blosmeth er the fruit ywoxen be ;  
 The blosmy tre n'is neither drie ne ded :  
 I fele me no wher hoor but on my hed.  
 Min herte and all my limmes ben as grene, 9339  
 As laurer thurgh the yere is for to sene.  
 And sin that ye han herd all min entent,  
 I pray you to my will ye wolde assent.

Diverse men diversely him told  
 Of mariage many ensamples old ;  
 Som blamed it, som praised it certain ;  
 But atte laste, shortly for to sain,  
 (As all day falleth altercation,  
 Betwixen frendes in disputison) 9348

Ther fell a strif betwix his brethren two, 9349  
Of which that on was cleped Placebo,  
Justinus sothly called was that other.

Placebo sayd ; O January brother,  
Ful litel nede han ye, my lord so dere,  
Conseil to aske of any that is here :  
But that ye ben so ful of sapience,  
That you ne liketh for your high prudence,  
To weiven fro the word of Salomon. 9357

This word sayd he unto us everich on ;  
Werke alle thing by conseil, thus sayd he,  
And than ne shalt thou not repenten thee.  
But though that Salomon spake swiche a word,  
Min owen dere brother and my lord,  
So wisly God my soule bringe at rest,  
I hold your owen conseil is the best.

For, brother min, take of me this motif, 9365  
I have now ben a court-man all my lif,  
And God it wot, though I unworthy be,  
I have stonden in ful gret degree  
Abouten lordes of ful high estat :  
Yet had I never with non of hem debat,  
I never hem contraried trewely.  
I wot wel that my lord can more than I ;  
What that he saith, I hold it firme and stable,  
I say the same, or elles thing semblable. 9374

- A ful gret fool is any conseeillour, 9375  
 That serveth any lord of high honour,  
 That dare presume, or ones thinken it,  
 That his conseil shuld passe his lordes wit.  
 Nay, lordes be no fooles by my fay.  
 Ye han yourselven shewed herè to-day  
 So high sentence, so holily, and wel,  
 That I consent, and confirme every del  
 Your wordes all, and your opinioun. 9383  
 By God ther n'is no man in all this toun.  
 Ne in Itaille, coud bet han ysayd :  
 Crist holt him of this conseil wel apaid.  
 And trewely it is an high corage  
 Of any man that stopen is in age,  
 To take a young wif, by my fader kin :  
 Your herte hongeth on a joly pin.  
 Doth now in this matere right as you lest, 9391  
 For finally I hold-it for the best.  
 Justinus, that ay stille sat and herd,  
 Right in this wise he to Placebo answerd.  
 Now, brother min, be patient I pray,  
 Sin ye han said, and herkneþ what I say.  
 Senek among his other wordes wise  
 Saith, that a man ought him right wel avise,  
 To whom he yeveth his lond or his catel.  
 And sith I ought avisen me right wel, 9400



To whom I yeve my good away fro me, 9401

Wel more I ought avisen me, parde,

To whom I yeve my body : for alway

I warne you wel it is no childes play

• To take a wif without avisement.

Men must enqueren (this is min assent)

Wheder she be wise and sobre, or dronkelewe,

Or proud, or elles other waies a shrew,

A chidester, or a wastour of thy good, 9409

Or riche or poure, or elles a man is wood.

Al be it so, that no man finden shal

Non-in this world, that trotteth hol in al,

Ne man, ne beste, swiche as men can devise,

But natheles it ought ynough suffice

With any wif, if so were that she had

Mo goode thewes, than hire vices bad :

And all this axeth leiser to enquire. 9417

For God it wot, I have wept many a tere

Ful prively, sin that I had a wif.

Praise who so wol a wedded mannes lif,

Certain I find in it but cost and care,

And observances of alle blisses bare.

And yet, God wot, my neighebour's aboute,

And namely of women many a route,

Sain that I have the moste stedefast wif,

And eke the mekest on that bereth lif. 9426

But I wot best, wher wringeth me my sho. 9427

Ye may for me right as you liketh do.

Aviseth you, ye ben a man of age,

How that ye entren into mariage ;

And namely with a yong wif and a faire.

By him that made water, fire, erthe, and aire,

The yongest man, that is in all this route,

Is besy ynow to bringen it aboute

To han his wif alone, trusteth me : 9435

Ye shul not plesen hire fully yeres three,

This is to sain, to don hire ful plesance.

A wif axeth ful many an observance.

I pray you that ye be not evil apaid.

Wel, quod this January, and hast thou saide ?

Straw for Senek, and straw for thy proverbes,

I counte not a panier ful of herbes.

Of scole termes ; wiser men than thou, 9443

As thou hast herd, assented here right now

To my purpos : Placebo, what saye ye ?

I say it is a cursed man, quod he,

That letteth matrimoine sikerly.

And with that word they risen sodenly,

And ben assented fully, that he sholdè

Be wedded whan him list, and wher he wolde.

High fantasie and curious besinesse

Fro day to day gan in the soule empresse 9452

Of January about his mariage. 9453  
 Many a faire shap, and many a faire visage  
 Ther passeth thurgh his herte night by night.  
 As who so toke a mirroure polished bright,  
 And set it in a comune market place,  
 Than shuld he see many a figure pace  
 By his mirroure, and in the same wise  
 Gan January in with his thought devise  
 Of maidens, which that dwelten him beside : 9461  
 He wiste not wher that he might abide.  
 For if that on have beautee in hire face,  
 Another stont so in the peples grace  
 For hire sadnesse and hire benignitee,  
 That of the peple the gretest vois hath she :  
 And som were riche and hadden a bad name!  
 But natheles, betwix earnest and game,  
 He at the last appointed him on on, 9469  
 And let all other from his herte gon,  
 And chees hire of his owen auctoritee,  
 For love is blind all day, and may not see.  
 And whan that he was in his bed ybrought,  
 He purtreied in his herte and in his thought  
 Hire freshe beautee, and hire age tendre,  
 Hire middel smal, hire armes long and splendre,  
 Hire wise governance, hire gentillesse,  
 Hire womanly bering, and hire sadnesse. 9478

And whan that he on hire was condescended, 9479  
 Him thought his chois it might not ben amended ;  
 For whan that he himself concluded had,  
 Him thought eche other mannes wit so bad,  
 That impossible it were to replie  
 Again his chois ; this was his fantasie.

His frendes sent he to, at his instance,  
 And praied hem to don him that plesance,  
 That hastily they wolden to him come ; 9487  
 He wolde abregge hir labour all and some ;  
 Neded no more to hem to go ne ride,  
 He was appointed ther he wolde abide.

Placebo came, and eke his frendes sone,  
 And alderfirst he bade hem all a bone,  
 That non of hem non argumētes make  
 Again the purpos that he hath ytake :  
 Which purpos was plesant to God (said he) 9495  
 And veray ground of his prosperitee.

He said, ther was a maiden in the toun,  
 Which that of beautee hadde gret renoun,  
 Al were it so, she were of smal degree,  
 Sufficeth him hire youth and hire beautee :  
 Which maid (he said) he wold han to his wif  
 To lede in ese and holinesse his lif :  
 And thanked God, that he might han hire all,  
 That no wight with his blisse parten shall : 9504

And praied hem to labour in this nede,  
 And shapen that he faille not to spede.  
 For than, he sayd, his spirit was at ese ;  
 Than is (quod he) nothing may me displese,  
 Save o thing pricketh in my conscience,  
 The which I wol reherse in your presence.

9505

I have (quod he) herd said ful yore ago,  
 Ther may no man han parfite blisses two,  
 This is to say, in erthe and eke in heven. 9513  
 For though he kepe him fro the sinnes seven,  
 And eke from every branch of thilke tree,  
 Yet is ther so parfit felicitee,  
 And so gret ese and lust in mariage,  
 That ever I am agast now in min age,  
 That I shal leden now so mery a lif,  
 So delicat, withouten wo or strif,  
 That I shal han min heven in erthe here. 9521  
 For sin that veray heven is bought so dere  
 With tribulation and gret penance,  
 How shuld I than, living in swiche plesance  
 As alle wedded men don with hir wives,  
 Come to the blisse, ther Crist eterne on live is ?  
 This is my drede, and ye, my brethren tweie,  
 Assoileth me this question I preie.

Justinus, which that hated his folie,  
 Answerd anon right in his japerie ;

9530

And for he wold his longe tale abryge, 9531  
 He wolde non auctoritee allege,  
 But sayde, sire, so ther be non obstacle  
 Other than this, God of his hie miracle,  
 And of his mercy may so for you werche,  
 That er ye have your rights of holy cherche,  
 Ye may repent of wedded mannes lif,  
 In which ye sain ther is no wo ne strif :  
 And elles God forbede, but if he sent 9539  
 A wedded man, his grace him to repent  
 Wel often, rather than a single man.  
 And therefore, sire, the best rede that I can,  
 Despeire you not, but haveth in memorie,  
 Paraventure she may be your purgatorie ;  
 She may be Goddes mene and Goddes whippe ;  
 Than shal your soule up unto heven skippe  
 Swifter than doth an arow of a bow. 9547  
 I hope to God hereafter ye shal know,  
 That ther n'is non so gret felicitee  
 In mariage, ne never more shal be,  
 That you shal let of your salvation,  
 So that ye use, as skill is and reson,  
 The lustes of your wif attemprely,  
 And that ye ples hire nat to amorously :  
 And that ye kepe you eke from other sinne.  
 My tale is don, for my wit is but thinne. 9556

Beth not agast hereof, my brother dere, 9557  
 But let us waden out of this matere.

The wif of Bathe, if ye han understonde,  
 Of mariage, which ye now han in honde,  
 Declared hath ful wel in litel space :

Fareth now wel, God have you in his grace.

And with this word this Justine and his brother  
 Han take hir leve, and eche of hem of other.

And whan they saw that it must nedes be, 9565  
 They wroughten so by sleighte and wise trettee,

That she this maiden, which that Maius hight,  
 As hastily as ever that she might,

Shal wedded be unto this January.

I trow it were to longe you to tary,

If I you told of every script and bond,

By which that she was feoffed in his lond ;

Or for to rekken of hire rich array. 9573

But finally ycomen is the day,

That to the chirche bothe ben they went,

For to receive the holy sacrament.

Forth cometh the preest, with stole about his nekke,

And bade hire be like Sara and Rebekke,

In wisdom and in trouthe of mariage :

And sayd his orisons, as is usage,

And crouched hem, and bade God shuld hem blesse,

And made all siker ynow with holinesse. 9582

Thus ben they wedded with solempnitee ; 9583  
 And at the feste sitteth he and shé  
 With other worthy folk upon the deis.  
 Al ful of joye and blisse is the paleis,  
 And ful of instruments, and of vitaille,  
 The moste deinteous of all Itaille.  
 Beforn hem stood swiche instruments of soun,  
 That Orpheus, ne of Thebes Amphion,  
 Ne maden never swiche a melodie. 9591  
 At every cours in came loude minstralcie,  
 That never Joab tromped for to here,  
 Ne he Theodomas yet half so clere  
 At Thebes, whan the citee was in doute.  
 Bacchus the win hem skinketh al aboute,  
 And Venus laugheth upon every wight,  
 (For January was become hire knight,  
 And wolde bothe assaien his corage 9599  
 In libertee, and eke in mariage)  
 And with hire firebrond in hire hond aboute  
 Danceth before the bride and all the route.  
 And certainly I dare right wel say this,  
 Ymeneus, that God of wedding is,  
 Saw never his lif so mery a wedded man.  
 Hold thou thy pees, thou poet Marcian,  
 That writest us that ilke wedding mery  
 Of hire Philologie and him Mercurié, 9608



And of the songes that the Muses songe :  
 To smal is both thy pen and eke thy tonge  
 For to descriven of this mariage.

9609

Whan tendre youth hath wedded stouping age,  
 Ther is swiche mirth that it may not be written ;  
 Assaieth it yourself, than may ye witen  
 If that I lie or non in this matere.

Maius, that sit with so benigne a chere,  
 Hire to behold it semed faerie,  
 Quene Hester loked never with swiche an eye  
 On Assuere, so meke a look hath she,  
 I may you not devise all hire beautee ;  
 But thus moch of hire beautee tell I may,  
 That she was like the brighte morwe of May  
 Fulfilled of all beautee, and plesance.

9617

This January is ravished in a trance,  
 At every time he loketh in hire face,  
 But in his herte he gan hire to manace,  
 That he that night in armes wold hire streine  
 Harder than ever Paris did Heleine.  
 But natheles yet had he gret pitee  
 That thilke night offenden hire must he,  
 And thought, alas, o tendre creature,  
 Now wolde God ye mighten wel endure  
 All my corage, it is so sharpe and kene ;  
 I am agast ye shal it nat sustene.

9625

9634

But God forbode, that I did all my might. 9635  
 Now wolde God that it were waxen night,  
 And that the night wold lasten ever mo.  
 I wold that all this peple were ago.  
 And finally he doth all his labour,  
 As he best mighte, saving his honour,  
 To haste hem fro the mete in subtil wise.

The time came that reson was to rise,  
 And after that men dance, and drinken fast, 9643  
 And spices all about the hous they cast,  
 And ful of joye and blisse is every man,  
 All but a squier, that highte Damian,  
 Which carf befor the knight ful many a day :  
 He was so ravisht on his lady May,  
 That for the veray peine he was nie wood ;  
 Almost he swelt, and swouned ther he stood :  
 So sore hath Venus hurt him with hire brond, 9651  
 As that she bare it dancing in hire hond.  
 And to his bed he went him hastily ;  
 No more of him as at this time speke I ;  
 But ther I let him wepe ynow and plaine,  
 Til freshe May wol rewen on his peine.

O perilous fire, that in the bedstraw bredeth !  
 O famuler fo, that his service bedeth !  
 O servant traitour, false of holy hewe,  
 Like to the nedder in bosom slie untrewē, 9660

God shelde us alle from your acquaintance ! 9661

O January, dronken in plesance  
Of mariage, see how thy Damian,  
Thin owen squier and thy boren man,  
Entendeth for to do thee yilanie :  
God grante thee thin homly fo to espie.  
For in this world n'is werse pestilence,  
Than homly fo, all day in thy presence. ,

Parformed hath the sonne his arke diurne, 9669  
No longer may the body of him sojourne  
On the orisont, as in that latitude :  
Night with his mantel, that is derke and rude,  
Gan oversprede the Hemisperie aboute :  
For which departed is this lusty route  
Fro January, with thank on every side.  
Home to hir houses lustily they ride,  
Ther as they don hir thinges, as hem lest, 9677  
And whan they saw hir time gon to rest.

Sone after that this hastif January  
Wol go to bed, he wol no longer tary.  
He drinketh Ipocras, clarre, and vernage  
Of spices hot, to encreasen his corage :  
And many a letuarie had he ful fine,  
Swiche as the cursed monk dan Constantine  
Hath written in his book *de Coitu* ;  
To ete hem all he wolde nothing eschue : 9686

And to his privee frendes thus sayd he :

9689

For Goddes love, as sone as it may be,  
Let voiden all this hous in curteis wise.

And they han don right as he wol devise.

Men drinken, and the travers drawe anon ;  
The bride is brought a-bed as still as ston ;  
And whan the bed was with the preest yblessed,  
Out of the chambre hath every' wight him dressed,

And January hath fast in armes take

9695

His freshe May, his paradis, his make.

He lulleth hire, he kisseth hire ful oft ;

With thicke bristles of his berd unsoft,

Like to the skin of houndfish, sharp as brere,

(For he was shave al newe in his manere)

He rubbeth hire upon hire tendre face,

And sayde thus ; Alas ! I mote trespace

To you, my spouse, and you gretly offend,

9703

Or time come that I wol down descend.

But natheles considereth this, (quod he)

Ther n'is no werkman, whatsoever he be,

That may both werken wel and hastily :

This wol be don at leiser parfitly.

It is no force how longe that we play ;

In trewe wedlok coupled be we tway ;

And blessed be the yoke that we ben inne,

For in our actes may ther be no sinne.

9712

A man may do no sinne with his wif, 9713  
 Ne hurt himselfen with his owen knif:  
 For we have leve to play us by the lawe.

Thus laboureth he, til that the day gan dawe,  
 And than he taketh a sop in finé clarre,  
 And upright in his bed than sitteth he.  
 And after that he sang ful loud and clere,  
 And kist his wif, and maketh wanton chere.  
 He was al coltish, ful of ragerie, 9721  
 And ful of jergon, as a flecked pie."

The slacke skin about his necke shaketh,  
 While that he sang, so chanteth he and craketh.  
 But God wot what that May thought in hire herte,  
 Whan she him saw up sitting in his sherte  
 In his night cap, and with his necke lene:  
 She praiseth not his playing worth a bene.  
 Than sayd he thus; my reste wol I take 9729  
 Now day is come, I may no lenger wake;  
 And doun he layd his hed and slept til prime.  
 And afterward, whan that he saw his time;  
 Up riseth January, but freshe May  
 Held hire in chambre til the fourthe day,  
 As usage is of wives for the beste.  
 For every labour sometime moste han reste,  
 Or elles longe may he not endure;  
 This is to say, no lives creature, 9738

Be it of fish, or brid, or best, or man.

9739

Now wol I speke of woful Damian,  
That langureth for love, as ye shul here ;  
Therefore I speke to him in this manere.  
I say, O sely Damian, alas !

Answer to this demand, as in this cas,  
How shalt thou to thy lady freshe May  
Tellen thy wo ? She wol alway say nay ;  
Eke if thou speke, she wol thy wo bewrein ;  
God be thin help, I can no better sein.

9747

This sike Damian in Venus fire  
So brenneth, that he dieth for desire ;  
For which he put his lif in aventure,  
No lenger might he in this wise endure,  
But prively a penner gan he borwe,  
And in a lettre wrote he all his sorwe,  
In manere of a complaint or a lay,  
Unto his faire freshe lady May.

9755

And in a purse of silk, heng on his sherte,  
He hath it put, and layd it at his herte.

The mone that at none was thilke day  
That January hath wedded freshe May  
In ten of Taure, was into Cancer gliden ;  
So long hath Maius in hire chambre abiden,  
As custome is unto these nobles alle.  
A bride shal not eten in the halle,

9764

Til dayes four or three dayes at the leste 9765  
Ypassed ben, than let hire go to feste.

The fourthe day complete fro none to none,

Whan that the highe messe was ydone,

In halle sat this January and May,

As fresh as is the brighte somers day.

And so befel, how that this goode man

Remembred him upon this Damian,

And sayde; Seinte Marie, how may it be, 9773

That Damian entendeth not to me?

Is he ay sike? or how may this betide?

His squiers, which that stoden ther beside,

Excused him, because of his siknesse,

Which letted him to don his besinesse:

Non other cause mighte make him tary.

That me forthinketh, quod this January;

He is a gentil squier by my trouthe, 9781

If that he died, it were gret harme and routhe.

He is as wise, discret, and as secree,

As any man I wote of his degree,

And therto manly and eke servisable,

And for to ben a thrifty man right able.

But after mete as sone as ever I may

wol myselfe visite him, and eke May,

To don him all the comfort that I can.

And for that word him blessed every man, 9790

That of his bountee and his gentillesse 9791  
 He wolde so comforten in siknesse  
 His squier, for it was a gentil dede.

Dame, quod this January, take good hede,  
 At after mete, ye with your women alle,  
 (Whan that ye ben in chambre out of this halle)

That all ye gon to see this Damian :  
 Doth him disport, he is a gentil man,  
 And telleth him that I wol him visite, 9799

Have I no thing but rested me a lite :  
 And spede you faste, for I wol abide  
 Til that ye slepen faste by my side.

And with that word he gan unto him calle  
 A squier, that was marshal of his halle;  
 And told him certain thinges that he wolde.

This freshe May hath streight hire way yholde  
 With all hire women unto Damian. 9807

Doun by his beddes side sit she than,  
 Comforting him as goodly as she may.

This Damian, whan that his time he say,  
 In secree wise, his purse, and eke his bill,  
 In which that he ywritten had his will,  
 Hath put into hire hond withouten more,  
 Save that he siked wonder depe and sore,  
 And softely to hire right thus sayd he ;  
 Mercie, and that ye nat discover me : 9816



For I am ded, if that this thing be kid. 9817

This purse hath she in with hire bosome hid,

And went hire way ; ye get no more of me ;

But unto January ycome is she,

That on his beddes side sate ful soft.

He taketh hire, and kisseth hire ful oft :

And layd him doun to slepe, and that anon.

She feined hire, as that she muste gon,

Ther as ye wote that every wight mot nede ; 9825

And whan she of this bill hath taken hede,

She rent it all to cloutes at the last,

And in the privee softely it cast.

Who studieth now but faire freshe May ?

Adoun by olde January she lay,

That slepte, til the cough hath him awaked :

Anon he prayd hire stripen hire al naked,

He wolde of hire, he said, have som plesance ; 9833

And said, hire clothes did him encombrance.

And she obeieth him, be hire lefe or loth.

But lest that precious folk be with me wroth,

How that he wrought, I dare nat to you tell,

Or wheder hire thought it paradis or hell ;

But ther I let hem werken in hir wise

Til evesong rang, and that they must arise.

Were it by destinee, or aventure,

Were it by influence, or by nature,

Or constellation, that in swiche estat 9843  
 The heven stood at that time fortunat,  
 As for to put a bill of Venus werkes  
 (For alle thing hath time, as sayn thise clerkes)  
 To many woman for to get hire love,  
 I cannot say, but grete God above,  
 That knoweth that non act is causeles,  
 He deme of all, for I wol hold my pees.  
 But soth is this, how that this freshe May 9851  
 Hath taken swiche impression that day  
 Of pitee on this sike Damian,  
 That fro hire herte she ne driven can  
 The remembrance for to don him ese.  
 Certain (thought she) whom that this thing displese  
 I rekke not, for here I him assure,  
 To love him best of any creature,  
 Though he no more hadde than his sherte. 9859  
 Lo, pitee renneth sone in gentil herte.  
 Here may ye seen, how excellent franchise  
 In women is whan they hem narwe avise.  
 Som tyraunt is, as ther ben many on,  
 That hath an herte as hard as any ston,  
 Which wold han lette him sterven in the place  
 Wel rather than han granted him hire grace :  
 And hem rejoycen in hir cruel pride,  
 And rekken not to ben an homicide. 9868

This gentil May, fulfilled of pitee, 9869  
 Right of hire hond a lettre maketh she,  
 In which she granteth him hire veray grace ;  
 Ther lacked nought, but only day and place,  
 Wher that she might unto his lust suffice :  
 For it shal be, right as he wol devise.

And whan she saw hire time upon a day  
 To visiten this Damian goth this May,  
 And sotilly this lettre doun she threst 9877  
 Under his pilwe, rede it if him lest.  
 She taketh him by the hond, and hard him twist,  
 So secretly, that no wight of it wist,  
 And bade him ben all hol, and forth she went  
 To January, whan he for hire sent.

Up riseth Damian the nexste morwe,  
 Al passed was his siknesse and his sorwe.  
 He kembeth him, he proineth him and piketh, 9885  
 He doth all that his lady lust and liketh ;  
 And eke to January he goth as lowe,  
 As ever did a dogge for the bowe.  
 He is so plesant unto every man,  
 (For craft is all, who so that don it can)  
 That every wight is fain to speke him good ;  
 And fully in his ladies grace he stood.

Thus let I Damian about his nede,  
 And in my tale forth I wol procede. 9894

Som clerkes holden that felicitee 9895  
 Stant in delit, and therfore certain he  
 This noble January, with all his might  
 In honest wise as longeth to a knight,  
 Shoep him to liven ful deliciously.  
 His housing, his array, as honestly  
 To his degree was maked as a kinges.  
 Amonges other of his honest thinges  
 He had a gardin walled all with ston, 9909  
 So fayre a gardin wote I no wher non.  
 For out of doute I veraily suppose,  
 That he that wrote the Romant of the Rose,  
 Ne coude of it the beautee wel devise ;  
 Ne Priapus ne mighte not suffise,  
 Though he be god of gârdins, for to tell  
 The beautee of the gardin, and the well,  
 That stood under a laurer alway grene. 9911  
 Ful often time he Pluto and his quene  
 Proserpina, and alle hir faerie,  
 Disporten hem and maken melodie  
 About that well, and daunced, as men told.  
 This noble knight, this January the old  
 Swiche deintee hath in it to walke and pley,  
 That he wol suffre no wight bere the key,  
 Sauf he himself, for of the smal wicket  
 He bare alway of silver a cliket, 9920

With which whan that him list he it unshette. 9921  
 And whan that he wold pay his wives dette  
 In somer seson thider wold he go,  
 And May his wif, and no wight but they two;  
 And thinges which that were not don a-bedde,  
 He in the gardin parfourned hem and spedde.

And in this wise many a mery day  
 Lived this January and freshe May,  
 But worldly joye may not alway endure 9929  
 To January, ne to no creature.

O soden hap, o thou fortune unstable,  
 Like to the Scorpion so deceivable,  
 That flatrest with thy hed whan thou wolt sting;  
 Thy tayl is deth, thurgh thin enveniming.  
 O brotel joye, o swete poyson queinte,  
 O monstre, that so sotilly canst peinte  
 Thy giftes, under hewe of stedfastnesse, 9937  
 That thou deceivest bothe more and lesse,  
 Why hast thou January thus deceived,  
 That haddest him for thy ful frend received?  
 And now thou hast beraft him both his eyen,  
 For sorwe of which desireth he to dyen.

Alas! this noble January free,  
 Amidde his lust and his prosperitee  
 Is waxen blind, and that al sodenly.  
 He wepeth and he wailleth pitously; 9946

And therwithall, the fire of jalousie 9917  
 (Lest that his wif shuld fall in som folie)  
 So brent his herte, that he wolde fain,  
 That som man had both him and hire yslain ;  
 For nother after his deth, ne in his lif,  
 Ne wold he that she were no love ne wif,  
 But ever live as a widewe in clothes blake,  
 Sole as the turtle that hath lost hire make.  
 But at the last, after a moneth or tway 9955  
 His sorwe gan asswagen, soth to say.  
 For whan he wist it might non other be,  
 He patiently toke his adversitee :  
 Sâve out of doute he ne may nat forgon,  
 That he n'as jalous ever more in on :  
 Which jalousie it was so outrageous,  
 That neither in halle, ne in non other hous,  
 Ne in non other place never the mo 9963  
 He n'olde suffre hire for to ride or go,  
 But if that he had honde on hire alway.  
 For which ful often wepeth freshe May,  
 That loveth Damian so brenningly,  
 That she moste either dien sodenly,  
 Or elles she moste han him as hire lest :  
 She waited whan hire herte wold to-brest.

Upon that ôther side Damian  
 Becomen is the sorwefullest man

That ever was, for neither night ne day 9973  
 Ne might he speke a word to freshe May,  
 As to his purpos of no swiche matere,  
 But if that January must it here,  
 That had an hand upon hire evermo.  
 But natheles, by writing to and fro,  
 And privee signes, wist he what she ment,  
 And she knew eke the fin of his entent.

O January, what might it thee availe, 9981  
 Though thou might seen, as fer as shippes saile?  
 For as good is blind to deceived be,  
 As be deceived, whan a man may see.  
 Lo Argus, which that had an hundred eyen,  
 For all that ever he coude pore or prien,  
 Yet was he blent, and, God wot, so ben mo,  
 That wenen wisly that it be not so:  
 Passe over is an ese, I say no more. 9989

This freshe May, of which I spake of yore,  
 In warme wex hath enprented the cliket,  
 That January bare of the smal wiket,  
 By which into his gardin oft he went;  
 And Damian that knew all hire entent  
 The cliket contrefeted prively;  
 Ther n'is no more to say, but hastily  
 Som wonder by this cliket shal betide,  
 Which ye shul heren, if ye wol abide. 9998

O noble Ovide, soth sayest thou, God wote, 9999  
 What sleight is it if love be long and hote,  
 That he n'ill find it out in som manere ?  
 By Pyramus and Thisbe may men lere ;  
 Though they were kept ful long and streit over all,  
 They ben accorded, rowning thurgh a wall,  
 Ther no wight coude han founden swiche a sleighte.  
 But now to purpos ; er that daies eighte  
 Were passed of the month of Juil, befill, 10007  
 That January hath caught so gret a will,  
 Thurgh egging of his wif, him for to play  
 In his gardin, and no wight but they tway,  
 That in a morwe unto this May said he ;  
 Rise up, my wif, my love, my lady free ;  
 The turtles vois is herd, myn owen swete ;  
 The winter is gon, with all his raines wete.  
 Come forth now with thin eyen columbine. 10015  
 Wel fairer ben thy brests than ony wine.  
 The gardin is enclosed all aboute ;  
 Come forth, my white spouse, for out of doute,  
 Thou hast me wounded in myn herte, o wif :  
 No spot in thee n'as never in all thy lif.  
 Come forth, and let us taken our disport,  
 I chese thee for my wif and my comfort.  
 \* Swiche olde lewed wordes used he.  
 On Damian a signe made she, 10024



That he shuld go before with his cliket. 10025  
This Damian hath opened the wicket,  
And in he stert, and that in swiche manere,  
That no wight might him see neyther yhere,  
And still he sit under a bush. Anon  
This January, as blind as is a ston,  
With Maius in his hand, and no wight mo,  
Into this freshe gardin is ago,  
And clapped to the wicket sodenly. 10033  
Now, wif, quod he, here n'is but thou, and I,  
That art the creature that I best love :  
For by that lord that sit in heven above,  
I hadde lever dien on a knif,  
Than thee offenden, dere trewe wif.  
For Goddes sake, thinke how I thee chees,  
Not for no covetise douteles,  
But only for the love I had to thee. 10041  
And though that I be old and may not see,  
Beth to me trewe, and I wol tell you why ;  
Certes three thinges shal ye win therby ;  
First love of Crist, and to yourself honour,  
And all min heritage, toun and tour.  
I yeve it you, maketh chartres as you lest :  
This shal be don to-morwe er sonne rest,  
So wisly God my soule bring to blisse ;  
I pray you on this covenant ye me kisse. 10050

And though that I be jalous, wite me nought; 10051  
 Ye ben so depe enprented in my thought,  
 That whan that I consider your beautee,  
 And therwithall the unlikely elde of me,  
 I may not certes, though I shulde die,  
 Forbere to ben out of your compaignie  
 For veray love; this is withouten doute:  
 Now kisse me, wif, and let us rome aboute.


This freshe May, whan she thise wordes herd, 10059  
 Benignely to January answerd,  
 But first and forward she began to wepe:  
 I have, quod she, a soule for to kepe  
 As wel as ye, and also min honour,  
 And of my wifhood thilke tendre flour,  
 Which that I have assured in your hond,  
 Whan that the preest to you my body bond:  
 Wherefore I wol answere in this manere, 10067  
 With leve of you, myn owen lord so dere.

I pray to God that never daw that day,  
 That I ne sterve, as foule as woman may,  
 If ever I do unto my kin that shame,  
 Or elles I empeire so my name,  
 That I be false; and if I do that lakke,  
 Do stripen me and put me in a sakke,  
 And in the nexte river do me drenche:  
 I am a gentil woman, and no wenche.

Why speke ye thus? but men ben ever untrewē, 10077  
And women han reпреve of you ay newe.  
Ye con non other daliance, I leve,  
But speke to us as of untrust and reпреve.

And with that word she saw wher Damian  
Sat in the bush, and coughen she began;  
And with hire finger a signe made she,  
That Damian shuld climbe up on a tre,  
That charged was with fruit, and up he went: 10085  
For veraily he knew all hire entent,  
And every signe that she coude make,  
Wel bet than January hire owen make.  
For in a lettre she had told him all  
Of this matere, how that he werken shall.  
And thus I let him sitting in the pery,  
And January and May roming ful mery.

Bright was the day, and blew the firmament; 10093  
Phebus of gold his stremes doun hath sent  
To gladen every flour with his warmnesse;  
He was that time in *Geminis*, I gesse,  
But litel fro his declination  
Of Cancer, Joves exaltation.  
And so befell in that bright morwe tide,  
That in the gardin, on the ferther side,  
Pluto, that is the king of Faerie,  
And many a ladie in his compaignie 10102

Folwing his wif, the quene Proserpina, 10103  
 Which that he ravished out of Ethna,  
 While that she gadred floures in the mede,  
 (In Claudian ye may the story rede,   
 How that hire in his grisely carte he fette)  
 This king of Faerie adoun him sette  
 Upon a benche of turves freshe and grene,  
 And right anon thus said he to his quene.

My wif, quod he, ther may no wight say nay, 10111  
 The experiance so preveth it every day,  
 The treson which that woman doth to man.  
 Ten hundred thousand stories tell I can  
 Notable of your untrouth and brotelnesse.

O Salomon, richest of all richesse,  
 Fulfilled of sapience, and worldly glorie,  
 Ful worthy ben thy wordes to memorie  
 To every wight, that wit and reson can. 10119  
 Thus praiseth he the bountee yet of man ;  
 Among a thousand men yet fond I on,  
 But of all women fond I never non.  
 Thus saith this king, that knewe your wikkednesse ;  
 And Jesus, *Filius* Sirach, as I gesse,  
 He speket of you but selden reverence.  
 A wilde fire, a corrupt pestilence,  
 So fall upon your bodies yet to-night :  
 Ne see ye not this honourable knight ? 10123

Because, alas ! that he is blind and old, 10129  
 His owen man shal make him cokewold.  
 Lo, wher he sit, the lechour, in the tree.  
 Now wol I graunten of my majestee  
 Unto this olde blinde worthy knight,  
 That he shal have again his eyen sight,  
 Whan that his wif wol don him vilanie ;  
 Than shal he knowen all hire harlotrie,  
 Both in reпреfe of hire and other mo. 10137

Ye, sire, quod Proserpine, and wol ye so ?  
 Now by my modre Ceres soule I swere,  
 That I shal yeve hire suffisant answerе,  
 And alle women after for hire sake ;  
 That though they ben in any gilt ytake,  
 With face bold they shul hemselve excuse,  
 And bere hem doun that wolden hem accuse.  
 For lacke of answerе, non of us shul dien. 10145  
 Al had ye seen a thing with bothe youre eyen,  
 Yet shul we so visаge it hardely,  
 And wepe and swere aud chiden subtilly,  
 That ye shul ben as lewed as ben gees.

What rekketh me of your auctoritees ?  
 I wote wel that this Jewe, this Salomon,  
 Fond of us women fooles many on :  
 But though that he ne fond no good woman,  
 Ther hath yfonden many an other man 10154

Women ful good, and trewe, and vertuous ; 10155  
 Witesse on hem that dwelte in Cristes hous,  
 With martyrdom they preved hir constance.  
 The Romain gestes maken remembrance  
 Of many a veray trewe wif also.

But, sire, ne be not wroth, al be it so,  
 Though that he said he fond no good woman,  
 I pray you take the sentence of the man :  
 He ment thus, That in soverain bountee 10163  
 N'is non but God, no, nouthur he ne she.

Ey, for the veray God that n'is but on,  
 What maken ye so moche of Salomon ?  
 What though he made a temple, Goddes hous ?  
 What though he riche were and glorious ?  
 So made he eke a temple of false goddes,  
 How might he don a thing that more forbode is ?  
 Parde as faire as ye his name emplastre, 10171  
 He was a lechour, and an idolastre,  
 And in his elde he veray God forsøke.  
 And if that God ne hadde (as saith the boke)  
 Spared him for his fathers sake, he sholde  
 Han lost his regne rather than he wolde.

I sete nat of all the vilanie,  
 That he of women wrote, a boterflie.  
 I am a woman, nedes moste I speke,  
 Or swell unto that time min herte breke. 10180

For sin he said that we ben jangleresses, 10181  
 As ever mote I brouken hole my tresses,  
 I shal nat sparen for no curtesie  
 To speke him harm, that sayth us vilanie.

Dame, quod this Pluto, be no lenger wroth,  
 I yeve it up : but sin I swore min oth,  
 That I wold graunten him his sight again,  
 My word shal stand, that warne I you certain :  
 I am a king, it sit me not to lie. 10189

And I, quod she, am quene of Faerie:  
 Hire answeere she shal han I undertake,  
 Let us no more wordes of it make.

Forsoth, quod he, I wol you not contrary.

Now let us turne again to January,  
 That in the gardin with his faire May  
 Singeth wel merier than the popinjay :  
 You love I best, and shal, and other non. 10197

So long about the alleyes is he gon,  
 Til he was comen again to thilke pery,  
 Wher as this Damian sitteth ful mery  
 On high, among the freshe leves grene.

This freshe May, that is so bright and shene,  
 Gan for to sike, and said ; alas my side !  
 Now, sire, quod she, for ought that may betide  
 I moste have of the peres that I see,  
 Or I moste die, so sore longeth me 10206

To eten of the smale peres grene : 10207  
 Help for hire love that is of heven quene.  
 I tell you wel a woman in my plit  
 May have to fruit so gret an appetit,  
 That she may dien, but she of it have.

Alas! quod he, that I n'adde here a knave,  
 That coude climbe, alas! alas! (quod he)  
 For I am blinde. Ye, sire, no force, quod she ;  
 But wold ye vouchesauf for Goddes sake, 10215  
 The pery in with your armes for to take,  
 (For wel I wot that ye mistrusten me)  
 Than wold I climben wel ynough, (quod she)  
 So I my fote might setterr on your back.

Certes, said he, therin shal be no lack,  
 Might I you helpen with min herte blood.

. He stoupeth down, and on his back she stood,  
 And caught hire by a twist, and up she goth. 10223  
 (Ladies, I pray you that ye be not wroth,  
 I can nat glose, I am a rude man<sup>h</sup>)  
 And sodenly anon this Damian  
 Gan pullen up the smock, and in he throng.

And whan that Pluto saw this grete wrong,  
 To January he yaf again his sight,  
 And made him see as wel as ever he might.  
 And whan he thus had caught his sight again,  
 Ne was ther never man of thing so fain : 10232



But on his wif his thought was ever mo. 10233

Up to the tree he cast his eyen two,  
And saw how Damian his wife had dressed  
In swiche manere, it may not ben expressed,  
But if I wolde speke uncurteisly.

And up he yaf a roring and a cry,  
As doth the mother whan the child shal die;  
Out! helpe! alas! harow! he gan to cry;  
O stronge lady store, what doest thou? 10241

And she answered: sire, what aileth you?  
Have patience and reson in your minde,  
I have you holpen on both your eyen blinde.  
Up peril of my soule, I shal nat lien,  
As me was taught to helpen with your eyen,  
Was nothing better for to make you see,  
Than strogle with a man upon a tree:  
God wot, I did it in ful good entent. 10249

Strogle! quod he, ye, algate in it went.  
God yeve you both on shames deth to dien!  
He swived thee; I saw it with min eyen;  
And elles be I honged by the halse.

Than is, quod she, my medicine al false.  
For certainly, if that ye mighten see,  
Ye wold not say thise wordes unto me.  
Ye have som glimsing, and no parfit sight.

I see, quod he, as wel as ever I might, 10258

(Thanked be God) with both min eyen two, 10259  
 And by my feith me thought he did thee so.

Ye mase, ye masen, goode sire, quod she ;  
 This thank have I for I have made you see :  
 Alas ! quod she, that ever I was so kind.

Now, dame, quod he, let al passe out of mind :  
 Come down, my lefe, and if I have missaid,  
 God helpe me so, as I am evil apaid.

But by my fadres soule, I wende have sein, 10267  
 How that this Damian had by thee lein,  
 And that thy smock had lein upon his brest.

Ye, sire, quod she, ye may wene as you lest :  
 But, sire, a man that waketh of his slepe,  
 He may not sodenly wel taken kepe  
 Upon a thing, ne seen it parfitly,  
 Til that he be adawed veraily.

Right so a man, that long hath blind ybe, 10275  
 He may not sodenly so wel ysee,  
 First whan his sight is newe comen agein,  
 As he that hath a day or two ysein.

Til that your sight ysateled be a while,  
 Ther may ful many a sighte you begile.  
 Beware, I pray you, for by heven king  
 Ful many a man weneth to see a thing,  
 And it is all another than it semeth :

He which that misconceiveth oft misdemeth. 10284

And with that word she lep down fro the tree. 10285  
 This January who is glad but he ?  
 He kisseth hire, and clippeth hire ful oft,  
 And on hire wombe he stroketh hire ful soft ;  
 And to his paleis home he hath hire lad.  
 Now, goode men, I pray you to be glad.  
 Thus endeth here my tale of Januarie,  
 God blesse us, and his moder Seinte Marie. 10292

## THE SQUIERES PROLOGUE.

By Goddes mercy, saydeoure Hoste tho,  
 Now swiche a wif I preie God kepe me fro.  
 Lo, swiche sleightes and subtilitees  
 In women ben ; for ay as besy as bees  
 Ben they us sely men for to deceive, 10297  
 And from a sothe wol they ever weive.  
 By this Marchantes tale it preveth wel.  
 But natheles, as trewe as any stele,  
 I have a wif, though that she poure be ;  
 But of hire tonge a labbing shrewe is she ;  
 And yet she hath an hepe of vices mo.  
 Therof no force ; let all swiche thinges go.  
 But wete ye what ? in conseil be it seyde,  
 Me reweth sore I am unto hire teyde ; 10306

For and I shulde rekene every vice, 10307  
 Which that she hath, ywis I were to nice ;  
 And cause why, it shulde reported be  
 And told to hire of som of this compaignie,  
 (Of whom it nedeth not for to declare,  
 Sin women connen utter swiche chaffare)  
 And eke my wit sufficeth not therto  
 To tellen all; wherfore my tale is do.

Squier, come ner, if it youre wille be, 10315  
 And say somewhat of love, for certes ye  
 Connen theron as moche as any man.  
 Nay, sire, quod he, but swiche thing as I can  
 With hertly wille, for I wol not rebelle  
 Agein youre lust, a tale wol I telle.  
 Have me excused if I speke amis ;  
 My wille is good ; and lo, my tale is this. 10322

## THE SQUIERES TALE.

At Sarra, in the lond of Tartarie,  
 Ther dwelt a king that werreied Russie,  
 Thurgh which ther died many a doughty man :  
 This noble king was cleped Cambuscan, 1  
 Which in his time was of so gret renoun,  
 That ther n'as no wher in no regioun, 10328

So excellent a'lord in alle thing : 10329

Him lacked nought that longeth to a king,  
 As of the secte of which that he was borne.  
 He kept his lay to which he was ysworne,  
 And therto he was hardy, wise, and riche,  
 And pitous and just, and alway yliche ;  
 Trewe of his word, benigne and honourable ;  
 Of his corage as any centre stable ;

Yong, fresh, and strong, in armes desirous, 10337  
 As any bacheler of all his hous.

A faire person he was, and fortunate,  
 And kept alway so wel real estat,  
 That ther n'as no wher swiche another man.

This noble king, this Tartre Cambuscan,  
 Hadde two sones by Elfeta his wif,  
 Of which the eldest sone highte Algarsif,  
 That other was ycleped Camballo. 10345

A doughter had this worthy king also,  
 That yongest was, and highte Canace :  
 But for to tellen you all hire beautee,  
 It lith not in my tonge, ne in my conning,  
 I dare not undertake so high a thing :  
 Min English eke is unsufficient,  
 It muste ben a Rethor excellent,  
 That coude his colours longing for that art,  
 If he shuld hire descriven ony part : 10354

I am not swiche, I mote speke as I can. 10355

And so befell, that whan this Cambuscan  
 Hath twenty winter borne his diademe,  
 As he was wont fro yere to yere I deme,  
 He let the feste of his nativitee  
 Don crien, thurghout Sarra his citee,  
 The last Idus of March, after the yere.

Phebus the sonne ful jolif was and clere,  
 For he was nigh his exaltation 10363  
 In Martes face, and in his mansion  
 In Aries, the colerike hote signe :  
 Ful lusty was the wether and benigne,  
 For which the foules again the sonne shene,  
 What for the seson and the yonge grene,  
 Ful loude songen hire affections :  
 Hem semed han gotten hem protections  
 Again the swerd of winter kene and cold. 10371

This Cambuscan, of which I have you told,  
 In real vestiments, sit on his deis  
 With diademe, ful high in his paleis ;  
 And holt his feste so solempne and so riche,  
 That in this world ne was ther non it liche.  
 Of which if I shal tellen all the array,  
 Than wold it occupie a somers day ;  
 And eke it nedeth not for to devise  
 At every cours the order of hir service. 10380

I wol not tellen of hir strange sewes, 10381  
 Ne of hir swannes, ne hir heronsewes.  
 Eke in that lond, as tellen knightes old,  
 Ther is som mete that is ful deintee hold,  
 That in this lond men recche of it ful smal :  
 Ther n'is no-man that may reporten al.  
 I wol not tarien you, for it is prime,  
 And for it is no fruit, but losse of time,  
 Unto my purpose I wol have recours. 10389

And so befell that after the thridde cours  
 While that this king sit thus in his nobley,  
 Herking his ministralles hir thinges pley  
 Beforne him at his bord deliciously,  
 In at the halle dore al sodenly  
 Ther came a knight upon a stede of bras,  
 And in his hond a brod mirroure of glas ;  
 Upon his thombe he had of gold a ring, 10397  
 And by his side a naked swerd hanging :  
 And up he rideth to the highe bord.  
 In all the halle ne was ther spoke a word,  
 For mervaille of this knight ; him to behold  
 Ful besily they waiten yong and old.  
 This strange knight that come thus sodenly  
 Al armed save his hed ful richely,  
 Salueth king and quene, and lordes alle  
 By order, as they saten in the halle, 10405

With so high reverence and observance, 10407  
 As wel in speche as in his contenance,  
 That Gawain with his olde curtesie,  
 Though he were come agen out of faerie,  
 Ne coude him not amenden with a word.  
 And after this, beforn the highe bord  
 He with a manly vois sayd his message,  
 After the forme used in his langage,  
 Withouten vice of sillable or of letter. 10415  
 And for his tale shulde seme the better,  
 Accordant to his wordes was his chere,  
 As techeth art of speche hem that it lere.  
 Al be it that I cannot sounne his stile,  
 Ne cannot climben over so high a stile,  
 Yet say I this, as to comun entent,  
 Thus much amounteth all that ever he ment,  
 If it so be that I have it in mind. 10423

He sayd ; The king of Arabie and of Inde,  
 My liege lord, on this solempne day  
 Salueth you as he best can and may,  
 And sendeth you in honour of your feste  
 By me, that am al redy at your heste,  
 This stede of bras, that esily and wel  
 Can in the space of a day naturel,  
 (This is to sayn, in four and twenty houres)  
 Wher so you list, in drought or elles shoures, 10432



Beren your body into every place, 10438  
 To which your herte willeth for to pace,  
 Withouten wemme of you, thurgh foule or faire.  
 Or if you list to fleen as high in the aire,  
 As doth an egle, whan him list to sore,  
 This same stede shal bere you evermore  
 Withouten harme, till ye be ther you lest,  
 (Though that ye slepen on his back or rest)  
 And turne again, with writhing of a pin. 10441  
 He that it wrought, he coude many a gin;  
 He waited many a constellation,  
 Or he had don this operation,  
 And knew ful many a sele and many a bond.

This mirroure eke, that I have in min hond,  
 Hath swiche a might, that men may in it see,  
 Whan ther shal falle ony adversitee  
 Unto your regne, or to yourself also, 10449  
 And openly, who is your frend or fo.  
 And over all this, if any lady bright  
 Hath set hire herte on any maner wight,  
 If he be false, she shal his treson see,  
 His newe love, and all his subtiltee.  
 So openly, that ther shal nothing hide.

Wherefore again this lusty somer tide  
 This mirroure and this ring, that ye may se,  
 He hath sent to my lady Canace, 10458

Your excellent daughter that is here. 10459

The vertue of this ring, if ye wol here,  
Is this, that if hire list it for to were

Upon hire thombe, or in hire purse it bere,  
Ther is no foule that fleeth under heven;

That she ne shal wel understand his steven,

And know his mening openly and plaine,

And answeere him in his langage again :

And every gras that groweth upon rote : 10467

She shal eke know, and whom it wol do bote,

All be his woundes never so depe and wide.

This naked swerd, that hangeth by my side,

Swiche vertue hath, that what man that it smite,

Thurghout his armure it wol kerve and bite,

Were it as thicke as is a braunched oke :

And what man that is wounded with the stroke

Shal never be hole, til that you list of grace 10475

To stroken him with the platte in thilke place

Ther he is hurt; this is as much to sajn,

Ye moten with the platte swerd again

Stroken him in the wound, and it wol close.

This is the veray soth withouten glose,

It failleth not, while it is in your hold.

And whan this knight hath thus his tale told,

He rideth out of halle, and doun he light :

His stede, which that shone as sonne bright, 10484

Stant in the court as stille as any ston.  
 This knight is to his chambre ladder anon;  
 And is unarmed, and to the mete ysette.  
 These presents ben ful richelich yfette,  
 This is to saie, the swerd and the mirror,  
 And borne anon into the highe tour,  
 With certain officers ordained therfore;  
 And unto Canace the ring is bore  
 Solempnely, ther she sat at the table;  
 But sikerly, withouten any fable,  
 The hors of bras, that may not be remued;  
 It stant, as it were to the ground yglued;  
 Ther may no man out of the place it drive,  
 For non engine, of windas, or polive:  
 And cause why, for they con not the craft,  
 And therefore in the place they han it left,  
 Til that the knight hath taught hem the manere  
 To voiden him, as ye shal after here.

Gret was the prees, that swarmed to and fro  
 To gauren on this hors that stondesth so:  
 For it so high was, and so brod and long,  
 So wel proportioned for to be strong,  
 Right as it were a stede of Lumbardie;  
 Therwith so horsly, and so quik of eye,  
 As it a gentil Poileis courser were:  
 For certes, fro his tayl unto his ere

Nature ne art ne coud him not amend 10511  
 In no degre, as all the peple wend.

But evermore hir moste wonder was,  
 How that it coude gon, and was of bras ;  
 It was of faerie, as the peple semed.  
 Diverse folk diversely han demed ;  
 As many heds, as many wittes ben.  
 They murmured, as doth a swarme of been,  
 And madent skilles after hir fantasies, 10519  
 Rehersing of the olde poetries,  
 And sayd it was ylike the Pegasee,  
 The hors that hadde winges for to flee,  
 Or elles it was the Grekes hors Sinon,  
 That broughte Troye to destruction,  
 As men moun in thise olde gestes rede.

Min herte (quod on) is evermore in drede,  
 I trow som men of armes ben therin, 10527  
 That shapen hem this citee for to win :  
 It were right good that al swiche thing were know.  
 Another rowned to his felaw low,  
 And sayd, He lieth, for it is rather like  
 An apparence ymade by som magike,  
 As jogelours plaien at thise festes grete.  
 Of sondry doutes thus they jangle and trete,  
 As lewed peple demen comunly  
 Of thinges, that ben made more subtilly, 10536

Than they can in hir lewednesse comprehend, 10537  
 They demen gladly to the badder ende.

And som of hem wondred on the mirrour,  
 That born was up in to the maister tour,  
 How men mighte in it swiche thinges see.

Another answerd, and sayd, it might wel be  
 Naturelly by compositions

Of angles, and of slie reflections ;  
 And saide that in Rome was swiche on. 10545

They speke of Alhazen and Vitellon,  
 And Aristotle, that writen in hir lives  
 Of queinte mirrours, and of prospectives,  
 As knowen they, that han hir bookes herd.

And other folk han wondred on the swerd,  
 That wolde percen thurghout every thing :  
 And fell in speche of Telephus the king,  
 And of Achilles for his queinte spere, 10553

For he coude with it both hele and dere,  
 Right in swiche wise as men may with the swerd,  
 Of which right now ye have yourselven herd.

They speken of sondry harding of metall,  
 And speken of medicines therwithall,  
 And how, and whan it shuld yharded be,  
 Which is unknow algates unto me.

Tho speken they of Canacees ring,  
 And saiden all, that swiche a wonder thing 10562

Of craft of ringes herd they never non, 10563  
 Save that he Moises and king Salomon  
 Hadden a name of conning in swiche art.  
 Thus sain the peple, and drawn hem apart.

But patheles som saiden that it was  
 Wonder to maken of ferne ashen glas,  
 And yet is glas nought like ashen of ferne,  
 But for they han yknowen it so ferne,  
 Therefore ceseth hir jangling and hir wonder. 10571

As sore wondren som on cause of thonder,  
 On ebbe and froud, on gossomer, and on mist,  
 And on all thing, til that the cause is wist.

Thus janglen they, and demen and devise,  
 Til that the king gan fro his bord arise.

Phebus hath left the angle meridional,  
 And yet ascending was the beste real,  
 The gentil Leon, with his Aldrian, 10579  
 Whan that this Tartre king, this Cambuscan,  
 Rose from his bord, ther as he sat ful hie :  
 Beforne him goth the loude minstralcie,  
 Til he come to his chambre of parements,  
 Ther as they sounden divers instruments,  
 That it is like an heven for to here.

Now dauncen lusty Venus children dere :  
 For in the fish hir lady set ful hie,  
 And loketh on hem with a frendly eye. 10588

This noble king is set upon his trone ; 10589  
 This straunge knight is fet to him ful sone,  
 And on the daunce he goth with Canace.

Here is the revell and the jolitee,  
 That is not able a dull man to devise :  
 He must han knowen love and his servise,  
 And ben a festlich man, as fresh as May,  
 That shulde you devisen swiche array.

Who coude tellen you the forme of daunces 10597  
 So uncouth, and so freshe contenaunces,  
 Swiche subtil lokings and dissimulings,  
 For dred of jalous mennes apperceivings ?  
 No man but Launcelot, and he is ded.  
 Therefore I passe over all this lustyhed,  
 I say no more, but in this jolinesse  
 I lete hem, til men to the souper hem dresse.

The steward bit the spices for to hie 10605  
 And eke the win, in all this melodie ;  
 The ushers and the squierie ben gon,  
 The spices and the win is come anon :  
 They ete and drinke, and whan this had an end,  
 Unto the temple, as reson was, they wend :  
 The service don, they soupen all by day.

What nedeth you rehersen hir array ?  
 Eche man wot wel, that at a kinges fest  
 Is plentee, to the most and to the lest, 10614

And deintees mo than ben in my knowing. 10615

At after souper goth this noble king  
To seen this hors of bras, with all a route  
Of lordes and of ladies him aboute.

Swiche wondring was ther on this hors of bras,  
That sin the gret assege of Troye was,  
Ther as men wondred on an hors also,  
Ne was ther swiche a wondring, as was tho.

But finally the king asketh the knight 10623  
The vertue of this courser, and the might,  
And praied him to tell his governaunce

This hors anon gan for to trip and daunce,  
Whan that the knight laid hond up on his rein,  
And saide, sire, ther n'is no more to sain,  
But whan you list to riden any where,  
Ye moten trill a pin, stant in his ere,  
Which I shal tellen you betwixt us two, 10631  
Ye moten nempne him to what place also,  
Or to what contree that you list to ride.

And whan ye come ther as you list abide,  
Bid him descend, and trill another pin,  
(For therin lieth the effect of all the gin)  
And he wol down descend and don your will,  
And in that place he wol abiden still :  
Though al the world had the contrary swore,  
He shal not thennes be drawe ne be bore. 10640



Or if you list to bid him thennes gon, 10641  
 Trille this pin, and he wol vanish anon  
 Out of the sight of every maner wight,  
 And come agen, be it by day or night,  
 Whan that you list to clepen him again  
 In swiche a guise, as I shal to you sain  
 Betwixen you and me, and that ful sone.  
 Ride whan you list, ther n'is no more to done.

Enfourmed whan the king was of the knight, 10649  
 And hath conceived in his wit aright  
 The maner and the forme of all this thing,  
 Ful glad and blith, this noble doughty king  
 Repaireth to his revel, as beforne.  
 The bridel is in to the tour yborne,  
 And kept among his jewels lefe and dere :  
 The hors vanisht, I n'ot in what manere,  
 Out of hir sight, ye get no more of me : 10657  
 But thus I lete in lust and jolitee  
 This Cambuscan his lordes festeyng,  
 Til that wel nigh the day began to spring.

*Pars secunda.*

The norice of digestion, the slepe,  
 Gan on hem winke, and bad hem taken kepe,  
 That mochel drinke, and labour wol have rest :  
 And with a galping mouth hem all he kest, 10664

And said, that it was time to lie adoun, 10665  
 For blood was in his dominatioun :  
 Cherisheth blood, natures frend, quod he.

They thanken him galping, by two by three ;  
 And every wight gan drawe him to his rest,  
 As slepe hem bade, they toke it for the best.

Hir dremes shul not now be told for me ;  
 Ful were hir hedes of fumositee,  
 That causeth dreȝme, of which ther is no charge. 10673  
 They slepen til that it was prime large,  
 The moste part, but it were Canace ;  
 She was ful mesurable, as women be.  
 For of hire father had she take hire leve  
 To gon to rest, sone after it was eve ;  
 Hire liste not appalled for to be,  
 Nor on the morwe unfastliche for to see ;  
 And slept hire firste slepe, and than awoke. 10681  
 For swiche a joye she in hire herȝe toke  
 Both of hire queinte ring, and of hire mirrour,  
 That twenty time she chaunged hire colour ;  
 And in hire slepe right for the impression  
 Of hire mirrour she had a vision.  
 Wherefore, or that the sonne gan up glide,  
 She clepeth upon hire maistresse hire beside,  
 And saide, that hire luste for to arise.

Thise olde women, that ben gladly wise, 10699

As is hire maistresse, answerd hire anon; 10691  
 And said ; Madame, whider wol ye goir  
 Thus erly ? for the folk ben all in rest.

I wol, quod she, arisen (for me lest  
 No longer for to slepe) and walken aboute.

Hire maistresse clepeth women a gret route,  
 And up they risen, wel a ten or twelve ;  
 Up riseth freshe Canace hireselve,  
 As rody and bright, as the yonge sonne, 10699  
 That in the ram is foure degrees yronne ;  
 No higher was he, whan she reddy was ;  
 And forth she walketh esily a pas,  
 Arrayed after the lusty seson sote  
 Lightely for to playe, and walken on fote,  
 Nought but with five or sixe of hire meinie ;  
 And in a trenche forth in the park goth she.

The vapour, which that fro the erthe glode, 10707  
 Maketh the sonne to seme rody and brode :  
 But natheles, it was so faire a sight,  
 That it made all hir hertes for to light,  
 What for the seson, and the morwening,  
 And for the foules that she herde sing.  
 For right anon she wiste what they ment  
 Right by hir song, and knew al hir entent.

The knotte, why that every tale is tolde,  
 If it be taried til the lust be colde 10716

Of hem, that hari it herkened after yore, 10717  
 The savour passeth ever lenger the more,  
 For fulsumnesse of the prolixitee :  
 And by that same reson thinketh me  
 I shuld unto the knotte condescende,  
 And maken of hire walking sone an ende.

Amidde a tree for-dry, as white as chalk,  
 As Canace was playing in hire walk,  
 Ther sat a faucon oyer hire hed ful hie, 10725  
 That with a pitous vois so gan to crie,  
 That all the wood resounded of hire cry,  
 And beten had hireself so pitously  
 With bothe hire winges, til the rede blood  
 Ran endelong the tree, ther as she stood.  
 And ever in on alway she cried and shrigh, t  
 And with hire bek hireselven she so twigh, t  
 That ther n'is tigre, ne no cruel best, 10733  
 That dwelleth other in wood, or in forest,  
 That n'olde han wept, if that he wepen coude,  
 For sorwe of hire, she shrigh alway so loude.

For ther was never yet no man on live,  
 If that he coude a faucon wel describe,  
 That herde of swiche another of fayrenesse  
 As wel of plumage, as of gentillesse,  
 Of shape, of all that might yrekened be.  
 A faucon peregrine semed she 10742

Of fremde lond, and ever as she stood, 10743  
 She swouned now and now for lack of blood,  
 Til wel neigh is she fallen fro the tree.

This faire kinges doughter Canace,  
 That on hire finger bare the queinte ring,  
 Thurgh which she understood wel every thing  
 That any foule mây in his leden sain,  
 And coude answere him in his leden again, 10751  
 Hath understonden what this faucon seyde,

And wel neigh for the routhe almost she deyd :  
 And to the tree she goth ful hastily,  
 And on this faucon loketh pitously,  
 And held hire lap-abrode, for wel she wist  
 The faucon muste fallen from the twist

Whan that she swouned next, for faute of blood.  
 A longe while to waiten hire she stood,  
 Til at the last she spake in this manere 10759  
 Unto the hauk, as ye shul after here.

What is the cause, if it be for to tell,  
 That ye ben in this furial peine of hell ?  
 Quod Canace unto this hauk above ;  
 Is this for sorwe of deth, or lossé of love ?  
 For as I trow, thise be the causes two,  
 That causen most a gentil herte wo.  
 Of other harme it nedeth not to speke,  
 For ye yourself upon yourself awreke, 10768

Which preveth wel, that other ire or drede 10769  
 Mote ben encheson of your cruel dede,  
 Sin that I se non other wight you chace.  
 For the love of God, as doth yourselven grace :  
 Or what may be your helpe ? for west ne est  
 Ne saw I never er now no brid ne best,  
 That ferde with himself so pitously.  
 Ye sle me with your sorwe veraily,  
 I have of you so gret compassioun. 10777  
 For Goddes love come fro the tree adoun ;  
 And as I am a kinges doughter trewe,  
 If that I veraily the causes knewe  
 Of your disese, if it lay in my might,  
 I wold amend it, or that it were night,  
 As wisly help me the gret God of kind.  
 And herbes shal I right ynough yfind,  
 To helen with your hurtes hastily. 10785

Tho shright this faucon yet more pitously  
 Than ever she did, and fell to ground anon,  
 And lith aswoun, as ded as lith a ston,  
 Til Canace hath in hire lappe hire take,  
 Unto that time she gan of swoun awake :  
 And after that she out of swoun abraide,  
 Right in hire haukes leden thus she sayde.

That pitee renneth sone in gentil herte  
 ( Feling his similitude in peines smerte) 10794

Is proved alle day, as men may see, 10795  
As wel by werke as by auctoritee,  
For gentil herte kitheth gentillesse.  
I see wel, that ye have on my distresse  
Compassion, my faire Canace,  
Of veray womanly benignitee,  
That nature in your principles hath set.  
But for non hope for to fare the bet,  
But for to obey unto your herte free, 10803  
And for to maken other yware by me,  
As by the whelpe chastised is the leon,  
Right for that cause and that conclusion,  
While that I have a leiser and a space,  
Min harme I wol confessen er I pace.  
And ever while that on hire sorwé told,  
That other wept, as she to water wold,  
Til that the faucon bad hire to be still, 10811  
And with a sike right thus she said hire till.  
Ther I was bred, (alas that ilke day !)  
And fostred in a roche of marble gray  
So tendrely, that nothing ailed me.  
I ne wist not what was adversitee,  
Til I coud flee ful high under the skie.  
Tho dwelled a tercelet me faste by,  
That semed welle of alle gentillesse,  
Al were he ful of treson and falsenesse. 10820

It was so wrapped under humble chere, 10821  
 And under hew of trowth in swiche manere,  
 Under plesance, and under besy peine,  
 That no wight coud have wend he coude feine,  
 So depe in greyn he died his coloures.  
 Right as a serpent hideth him under floures,  
 Til he may see his time for to bite ;  
 Right so this god of loves hypocrite  
 Doth so his ceremonies and obeisance,  
 And kepeth in semblaunt alle his observance, 10829  
 That souneth unto gentillesse of love.  
 As on a tombe is all the faire above,  
 And under is the corps, swiche as ye wote ;  
 Swiche was this hypocrite both cold and hote,  
 And in this wise he served his entent,  
 That, save the fend, non wiste what he ment :  
 Til he so long had weped and complained, 10837  
 And many a yere his service to me fained,  
 Till that min herte; to pitous and to nice,  
 Al iniocent of his crowned malice,  
 For-fered of his deth, as thoughte me,  
 Upon his othes and his seuretee,  
 Graunted him love, on this condition,  
 That evermo min honour and renoun  
 Were saved, bothe privee and apert ;  
 This is to say, that, after his desert, 10846



I yave him all min herte and all my thought, 10847  
 (God wote, and he, that other wayes nought)  
 And toke his herte in chaunge of min for ay.  
 But soth<sup>r</sup> is said, gon sithen is many a day,  
 A trewe wight and a theef thinken not on.

And whan he saw the thing so fer ygon,  
 That I had granted him fully my love,  
 In swiche a guise as I have said above,  
 And yeven him my trewe herte as free 10855  
 As he swore that he yaf his herte to me,  
 Anon this tigre, ful of doublenesse,  
 Fell on his knees with so gret humblesse,  
 With so high reverence, as by his chere,  
 So like a gentil lover of manere,  
 So ravished, as it semed, for the joye,  
 That never Jason, ne Paris of Troye,  
 Jason? certes, ne never other man, 10863  
 Sin Lamech was, that alderfirst began,  
 To loven two, as writen folk beforne,  
 Ne never sithen the first man was borne,  
 Ne coude man by twenty thousand part  
 Contrefete the sophimes of his art;  
 Ne were worthy to unbocle his galoche,  
 Ther doublenesse of faining shuld approche,  
 Ne coude so thanke a wight, as he did me.  
 His maner was an heven for to see 10872

To any woman, were she never so wise ; 10873  
 So painted he and kempt, at point devise,  
 As wel his wordes, as his contenance.  
 And I so loved him for his obeisance,  
 And for the trouthe I demed in his herte,  
 That if so were that any thing him smerte,  
 Al were it never so lite, and I it wist,  
 Me thought I felt deth at myn herte twist.  
 And shortly, so ferforth this thing is went, 10881  
 That my will was his willes instrument ;  
 This is to say, my will obeied his will  
 In alle thing, as fer as reson fill,  
 Keping the boundes of my worship ever :  
 Ne never had I thing so lefe, ne lever,  
 As him, God wot, ne never shal no mo.

This lasteth lenger than a yere or two,  
 That I supposed of him nought but good. 10889  
 But finally, thus at the last it stood,  
 That fortune wolde that he muste twin  
 Out of that place, which that I was in.  
 Wher me was wo, it is no question ;  
 I cannot make of it description.  
 For o thing dare I tellen boldely,  
 I know what is the peine of deth therby,  
 Swiche harme I felt, for he ne might byleve.

So on a day of me he toke his leve, 10908

10899

10907

10915

10924

So sorweful eke, that I wend veraily,  
 That he had felt as mochel harme as I;  
 Whan that I herd him speke, and saw his hewe.  
 But natheles, I thought he was so trewe,  
 And eke that he repairen shuld again  
 Within a litel while, soth to sain,  
 And reson wold eke that he muste go  
 For his honour, as often happeth so,  
 That I made vertue of necessitee,  
 And toke it wel, sin that it muste be.  
 As I best might, I hid fro him my sorwe,  
 And toke him by the hond, Seint John to borwe,  
 And said him thus; lo, I am youres all,  
 Beth swiche as I have ben to you and shall.  
 What he answerd, it nedeth not reherse;  
 Who can say bet than he, who can do werse?  
 Whan he hath al wel said, than hath he done.  
 Therefore behoveth him a ful long sponne,  
 That shal ete with a fend; thus herd I say.  
 So at the last he muste forth his way,  
 And forth he fleeth, til he come ther him lest.  
 Whan it came him to purpos for to rest,  
 I trow that he had thilke text in mind,  
 That alle thing repairing to his kind  
 Gladeth himself; thus sain men as I gesse:  
 Men loven of propre kind newefangelnessé,

As briddes don, that men in cages fede. 10925  
 For though thou night and day take of hem hede,  
 And strew hir cage faire and soft as silke,  
 And give hem sugre, hony, bred, and milke,  
 Yet right anon as that his dore is up,  
 He with his feet wol spurnen doun his cup,  
 And to the wood he wol, and wormes ete ;  
 So newefangel ben they of hir mete,  
 And loven noveltees of propre kind ; 10933  
 No gentillesse of blood ne may hem bind.

So ferd this tercelet, alas the day !  
 Though he were gentil borne, and fresh, and gay,  
 And goodly for to seen, and humble, and free,  
 He saw upon a time a kite flee,  
 And sodenly he loved this kite so,  
 That all his love is clene fro me ago.  
 And hath his trouthe falsed in this wise. 10941  
 Thus hath the kite my love in hire service,  
 And I am lorn withouten remedy.

And with that word this faucon gan to cry,  
 And swouneth eft in Canacees barme.  
 Gret was the sorwe for that haukes harme,  
 That Canace and all hire women made ;  
 They n'isten how they might the faucon glade.  
 But Canace hom bereth hire in hire lap,  
 And softely in plastres gan hire wrap, 10950

Ther as she with hire bek had hurt hireselve. 10951

Now cannot Canace but herbes delve  
 Out of the ground, and maken salves newe  
 Of herbes precious and fine of hewe,  
 To helen with this hauk ; fro day to night  
 She doth hire besinesse, and all hire might.  
 And by hire beddes hed she made a mew,  
 And covered it with velouettes blew,  
 In signe of trowth, that is in woman sene ; 10959  
 And all without the mew is peinted grene,  
 In which were peinted all these false foules,  
 As ben these tidifes, tercelettes, and owles ;  
 And pies, on hem for to cry and chide,  
 Right for despit were peinted hem beside.

Thus lete I Canace hire hauk keping.  
 I wol no more as now speke of hire ring,  
 Til it come eft to purpos for to sain, 10967  
 How that this faucon gat hire love again  
 Repentant, as the story telleth us,  
 By mediation of Camballus  
 The kinges sone, of which that I you told.  
 But hennesforth I wol my processe hold  
 To speke of adventures, and of batailles,  
 That yet was never herd so gret mervailles.

First wol I tellen you of Cambuscan,  
 That in his time many a citee wan : 10976,

And after wol I speke of Algarsif, 10977  
 How that he wan Theodora to his wif,  
 For whom ful oft in gret peril he was,  
 Ne had he ben holpen by the hors of bras.  
 And after wol I speke of Camballo,  
 That fought in listes with the brethren two  
 For Canace, er that he might hire winne,  
 And ther I left I wol again beginne. 10984

\* \* \* \* \*

### THE FRANKLEINES PROLOGUE.

In faith, Squier, thou hast thee wel yquit  
 And gentilly, I preise wel thy wit,  
 Quod the Frankelein ; considering thin youthe,  
 So felingly thou spekest, sire, I a loue, the  
 As to my dome, ther is non that is here, 10989  
 Of eloquence that shal be thy pere,  
 If that thou live ; God yeve thee goode chance,  
 And in vertue send thee continuance,  
 For of thy speking I have gret deintee.  
 I have a sone, and by the Trinitee  
 It were me lever than twenty pound worth lond,  
 Though it right now were fallen in my hond,  
 He were a man of swiche discretion,  
 As that ye ben : fie on possession, 10998

But if a man be vertuous withal. 10999

I have my sone snibbed, and yet shal,  
 For he to vertue listeth not to entend,  
 But for to play at dis, and to dispend,  
 And lese all that he hath, is his usage ;  
 And he had lever talken with a page,  
 Than to commune with any gentil wight,  
 Ther he might leren gentillesse aright.

Straw for your gentillesse, quod our hoste. 10107

What ? Frankelein, parde, sire, wel thou wost,  
 That eche of you mote tellen at the lest  
 A tale or two, or breken his behest.

That know I wel, sire, quod the Frankelein,  
 I pray you haveth me not in disdein,  
 Though I to this man speke a word or two.

Tell on thy tale, withouten wordes mo.

Gladly, sire hoste, quod he, I wol obey 11015

Unto your will ; now herkeneth what I sey ;  
 I wol you not contrarien in no wise,  
 As fer as that my wittes may suffice.  
 I pray to God that it may plesen you,  
 Than wot I wel that it is good ynow.

These olde gentil Bretons in hir dayes  
 Of diverse adventures maden layes,  
 Rimeyed in hir firste Breton tonge ;

Which layes with hir instruments they songe, 11024  
 Or elles redden hem for hir plesance,  
 And on of hem have I in remembrance,  
 Which I shal sayn with good wille as I can.

But, sires, because I am a borel man,  
 At my beginning first I you beseche  
 Have me excused, of my rude speche.

I lerned never rhetorike certain ;  
 Thing that I speke, it mote be bare and plain. 11032

I slept never on the mount of Pernaso,  
 Ne lerned Marcus Tullius Cicero.

Colours ne know I non, withouten drede,  
 But swiche colours as growen in the mede,  
 Or elles swiche as men die with or peinte ;  
 Colours of rhetorike ben to me queinte ;

My spirit feleth not of swiche matere.

But if you lust my tale shul ye here. 11040

### THE FRANKLEINES TALE.

IN Armorike, that called is Bretagne,  
 Ther was a knight, that loved and did his peine  
 To serve a ladie in his beste wise ;

And many a labour, many a gret emprise  
 He for his lady wrought, or she were wonne ;

For she was on the fairest under sonne, 11046



And eke therto comen of so high kinrede, 11047  
 That wel unnethes durst this knight for drede  
 Tell hire his wo, his peine, and his distresse.  
 But at the last, she for his worthinesse,  
 And namely for his meke obeysance,  
 Hath swiche a pitee caught of his penance,  
 That prively she fell of his accord  
 To take him for hire husbond and hire lord ;  
 (Of swiche lordship as men han over hir wives) 11055  
 And, for to lede the more in blisse hir lives,  
 Of his free will he swore hire as a knight,  
 That never in all his lif he day ne night  
 Ne shulde take upon him no maistrie  
 Agains hire will; ne kithe hire jalousie,  
 But hire obey, and folwe hire will in al,  
 As any lover to his lady shal :  
 Save that the name of soverainetee 11063  
 That wold he han for shame of his degree.  
 She thonked him, and with ful gret humblesse  
 She saide ; sire, sin of your gentillesse  
 Ye profren me to have so large a reine,  
 Ne wolde God never betwix us tweine,  
 As in my gilt, were either werre or strif :  
 Sire, I wol be your humble trewe wif,  
 Have here my trowth, till that myn herte breste.  
 Thus ben they both in quiete and in reste. 11072

- \* For o thing, sires, sauflly dare I seie, 11073  
 That frendes everich other must obeie,  
 If they wol longe holden compaignie.  
 Love wol not be constreined by maistrie.  
 Whan maistrie cometh, the God of love anon  
 Beteth his winges, and farewel, he is gon.  
 Love is a thing, as any spirit, free.  
 Women of kind desiren libertee,  
 And not to be constreined as a thral ; 11081  
 \* And so don men, if sothly I say shal.  
 Loke who that is most patient in love,  
 He is at his avantage all above.  
 \* Patience is an high vertue certain,  
 For it venquisheth, as thise clerkes sain,  
 Things that rigour never shulde atteine.  
 For every word men may not chide or pleine.  
 Lerneth to suffren, or, so mote I gon, 11089  
 Ye shul it lerne whether ye wol or non.  
 For in this world certain no wight ther is,  
 That he ne doth or sayth somtime amis.  
 Ire, sikenesse, or constellation,  
 Win, wo, or changing of complexion,  
 Causeth ful oft to don amis or speken :  
 On every wrong a man may not be wreken.  
 After the time must be temperance  
 To every wight that can of governance. 11093

And therefore hath this worthy wise knight  
 (To liven in ese) suffrance hire behight ;  
 And she to him ful wisly gan to swere,  
 That never shuld ther be defaute in here.

11099

Here may men seen an humble wise accord :  
 Thus hath she take hire servant and hire lord,  
 Servant in love, and lord in mariage.  
 Than was he both in lordship and servage ?  
 Servage ? nay ; but in lordship al above,  
 Sin he hath both his lady and his love :  
 His lady certes, and his wif also,  
 The which that law of love accordeth to.  
 And whan he was in this prosperitee,  
 Home with his wif he goth to his contree,  
 Not fer fro Penmark, ther his dwelling was,  
 Wher as he liveth in blisse and in solas.

11107

Who coude tell, but he had wedded be,  
 The joye, the ese, and the prosperitee,  
 That is betwix an husband and his wif ?  
 A yere and more lasteth this blisful lif,  
 Til that this knight, of which I spake of thus,  
 That of Cairrud was cleped Arviragus,  
 Shope him to gon and dwelle a yere or twaine  
 In Englelond, that cleped was eke Bretaigne,  
 To seke in armes worship and honour :  
 (For all his lust he set in swiche labour)

11115

11124

And dwelte ther two yere; the book saith thus. 11125

Now wol I stint of this Arviragus,  
 And speke I wol of Dorigene his wif,  
 That loveth hire husbond as hire hertes lif.  
 For his absence wepeth she and siketh,  
 As don these noble wives whan hem liketh;  
 She morneth, waketh, waileth, fasteth, plaineth;  
 Desir of his presence hire so distraineth,  
 That all this wide world she set at nought. 11133  
 Hire frendes, which that knew hire hevye thought,  
 Comforten hire in all that eyer they may;  
 They prechen hire, they telle hire night and day,  
 That causeles she sleth hireself, alas!  
 And every comfort possible in this cas  
 They don to hire, with all hir besinesse,  
 Al for to make hire leve hire hevinesse.

By processe, as ye knowen everich on, 11141  
 Men mowe so longe graven in a ston,  
 Til som figure therin emprented be:  
 So long han they comforted hire, til she  
 Received hath, by hope and by reson,  
 The emprenting of hir consolation,  
 Thurgh which hire grete sorwe gan assuage;  
 She may not alway duren in swiche rage.  
 And eke Arviragus, in all this care,  
 Hath sent his lettres home of his welfare, 11150

And that he wol come hastily again, 11151  
Or elles had this sorwe hire herte slain.

Hire frendes saw hire sorwe gan to slake,  
And preiden hire on knees for Goddes sake  
To come and roïnen in hir compaignie,  
Away to driven hire derke fantasie :  
And finally she granted that request,  
For wel she saw that it was for the best.

Now stood hire castel faste by the see, 11159  
And often with hire frendes walked she,  
Hire to disporten on the bank an hie,  
Wher as she many a ship and barge sie,  
Sailing hir cours, wher as hem list to go.  
But than was that a parcel of hire wo,  
For to hireself ful oft, alas ! said she,  
Is ther no ship, of so many as I see,  
Wol bringen home my lord? than were my herte 11167  
Al warished of his bitter peines smerte.

Another time wold she sit and thinke,  
And cast her eyen downward fro the brinke ;  
But whan she saw the grisly rockes blake,  
For veray fere so wold hire herte quake,  
That on hire feet she might hire not sustene.  
Than wold she sit adoun upon the grene,  
And pitously into the see behold,  
And say right thus, with careful sikes cold. 11176

Eterne God, that thurgh thy purveance 11177  
 Ledest this world by certain governance,  
 In idel, as men sain, ye nothing make.  
 But, lord, thise grisly fendly rockes blake,  
 That semen rather a foule confusion  
 Of werk, than any faire création  
 Of swiche a parfit wise God and stable,  
 Why han ye wrought this wērk unresonable ?  
 For by this werk, north, south, ne west, ne est, 11185  
 Ther n'is yfostred man, ne brid, ne best :  
 It doth no good, to my wit, but anoyeth.  
 See ye not, lord, how mankind it destroyeth ?  
 An hundred thousand bodies of mankind  
 Han rockes slain, al be they not in mind ;  
 Which mankind is so faire part of thy werk,  
 Thou madest it like to thyn owen merk.  
 Than, semeth it, ye had a gret chertee 11193  
 Toward mankind ; but how than may it be,  
 That ye swiche menes make it to destroyen ?  
 Which menes don no good, but ever anoyen.  
 I wote wel, clerkes wol sain as hem lest  
 By arguments, that all is for the best,  
 Though I ne can the causes nought yknow ;  
 But thilke God that made the wind to blow,  
 As kepe my lord, this is my conclusion :  
 To clerkes lete I all disputison : 11202

But wolde God, that all these rockes blake 11203  
Were sonken into helle for his sake.

These rockes slee min herte for the fere.

Thus wold she say with many a pitous tere.

Hire frendes saw that it was no disport

To romen by the see, but discomfort,

And shape hem for to plaien somwher elles.

They leden hire by rivers and by welles,

And eke in other places delitable; 11211

They dancen and they play at ches and tables.

So on a day, right in the morwe tide,

Unto a gardin that was ther beside,

In which that they had made hir ordinance

Of vitaille, and of other purveance,

They gon and plaie hem all the longe day:

And this was on the sixte morwe of May,

Which May had peynted with his softe shoures 11219

This gardin ful of leves and of floures :

And craft of mannes hond so curiously

Arrayed had this gardin trewely,

That never was ther gardin of swiche pris,

But if it were the veray paradys.

The odour of floures, and the freshe sight,

Wold han ymaked any herte light

That ever was born, but if to gret sikenesse

Or to gret sorwe held it in distresse, 11228

So ful it was of beautee and plesance. 11229

And after dinner gonnen they to dance  
 And sing also, sauf Dorigene alone,  
 Which made alway hire complaint and hire mone,  
 For she ne saw him on the dance go,  
 That was hire husband, and hire love also :  
 But natheles she must a time abide,  
 And with good hope let hire sorwe slide.

Upon this dance, amonges other men, 11237  
 Danced a squier before Dorigen,  
 That fresher was and jolier of array,  
 As to my dome, than is the month of May.  
 He singeth, danceth, passing any man,  
 That is or was sin that the world began ;  
 Therwith he was, if men shuld him discrive,  
 On of the beste faring men on live,  
 Yong, strong, and virtuous, and riche, and wise,  
 And wel beloved, and holden in gret prise. 11246  
 And shortly, if the soth I tellen shal,  
 Unweting of this Dorigene at al,  
 This lusty squier, servant to Venus,  
 Which that ycleped was Aurelius,  
 Had loved hire best of any creature  
 Two yere and more, as was his aventure :  
 But never dorst he tell hire his grevance,  
 Withouten cup he dranke all his penance. 11254



He was dispeired, nothing dorst he say, 11255  
 Sauf in his songes somewhat wold he wray  
 His wo, as in a general complaining ;  
 He said, he loved, and was beloved nothing.  
 Of swiche matere made he many layes,  
 Songes, complaintes, roundels, virelayes;  
 How that he dorste not his sorwe telle,  
 But languisheth, as doth a furie in helle;  
 And die he must, he said, as did Ecco 11263  
 For Narcissus, that dorst not tell hire wo.

In other maner than ye here me say,  
 Ne dorst he not to hire his wo bewray,  
 Sauf that paraventure sometime at dances,  
 Ther yonge folk kepen hir observances,  
 It may wel be he loked on hire face  
 In swiche a wise, as man that axeth grace,  
 But nothing wiste she of his entent. 11271  
 Natheles it happed, or they thennes went,  
 Because that he was hire neighebour,  
 And was a man of worship and honour,  
 And had yknowen him of time yore,  
 They fell in speche, and forth ay more and more  
 Unto his purpos drow Aurelius ;  
 And whan he saw his time, he saide thus.  
 Madame, quod he, by God that this world made,  
 So that I wist it might your herte glade, 11280

I wold that day, that your Arviragus 11281  
 Went over see, that I Aurelius  
 Had went ther I shuld never come again ;  
 For wel I wot my service is in vain,  
 My guerdon n'is but bresting of min herte.  
 Madame, rueth upon my' peines smerte,  
 For with a word ye may me sleen or save.  
 Here at your feet God wold that I were grave.

I ne have as now no leiser more to sey : 11289  
 Have mercy, swete, or ye wol do me dey.

She gan to loke upon Aurelius ;  
 Is this your will (quod she) and say ye thus ?  
 Never erst (quod she) ne wist I what ye ment :  
 But now, Aurelie, I know your entent.  
 By thilke God that yaf me soule and lif,  
 Ne shal I never ben an untrewē wif  
 In word ne werk, as fer as I have wit, 11297  
 I wol ben his to whom that I am knit :  
 Take this for final answer as of me.  
 But after that in play thus saide she.

Aurelie, (quod she) by high God above  
 Yet wol I granten you to ben your love,  
 (Sin I you see so pitously complaine)  
 Loke, what day that endelong Bretaigne  
 Ye remue all the rockes, ston by ston,  
 That they ne letten ship ne bote to gon, 11306

I say, whan ye han made the cost so clene 11307

Of rockes, that ther n'is no ston ysene,

Than wol I love you best of any man,

Have here my trouth, in all that ever I can ;

For wel I wote that it shal never betide.

Let swiche folie out of your herte glide.

What deintee shuld a man have in his lif

For to go love another mannes wif,

That hath hire body whan that ever him liketh ? 11315

Aurelius ful often sore siketh ;

Is ther non other grace in you ? quod he.

No, by that lord, quod she, that maked me.

Wo was Aurelie whan that he this herd,

And with a sorweful herte he thus answerd.

Madame, quod he, this were an impossible.

Than moste I die of soden deth horrible.

And with that word he turned him anon. 11323

Tho comē hire other frendes many on,

And in the alleyes romed up and down,

And nothing wist of this conclusioun,

But sodenly begonnen revel newe,

Til that the brighte sonne had lost his hewe,

For the orizont had reft the sonne his light ;

(This is as much to sayn as it was night)

And home they gon in mirthe and in solas ;

\*Sauf only wrecche Aurelius, alas !

11332

He to his hous is gon with sorweful herte. 11333  
 He saith, he may not from his deth asterte.  
 Him semeth, that he felt his herte cold,  
 Up to the heven his hondes gan he hold,  
 And on his knees bare he set him doun,  
 And in his raving said his orisoun.  
 For veray wo out of his wit he braide,  
 He n'iste what he spake, but thus he saide ;  
 With pitous herte his plaint hath he begonned 11341  
 Unto the goddes, and first unto the sonne.  
 He said ; Apollo, God and governour  
 Of every plante, herbe, tree, and flour,  
 That yevest after thy declination  
 To eche of hem his time and his seson,  
 As that thin herbergh changeth low and hie ;  
 Lord Phebus, cast thy merciabe eie  
 On wrecche Aurelie, which that am but lorne. 11349  
 Lo, lord, my lady hath my deth ysworne  
 Withouten gilt, but thy benignitee  
 Upon my dedly herte have som pitee.  
 For wel I wot, lord Phebus, if you lest,  
 Ye may me helpen, sauf my lady, best.  
 Now youcheth sauf, that I may you devise  
 How that I may be holpe and in what wise.  
 Your blisful suster, Lucina the shene,  
 That of the see is chief goddesse and quene, 11358

Though Neptunus have deitee in the see, 11359  
Yet emperice aboven him is she :  
Ye knowe wel, lord, that right as hire desire  
Is to be quiked and lighted of your fire,  
For which she folweth you ful besily,  
Right so the see desireth naturelly  
To folwen hire, as she that is goddesse  
Both in the see and rivers more and lesse.  
Wherefore, lord Phebus, this is my request, 11367  
Do this miracle, or do min herte brest ;  
That now next at this opposition,  
Which in the signe shal be of the Leon,  
As preyeth hire so gret a flood to bring,  
That five fadome at the lest it overspring  
The highest rock in Armorike Bretaigne,  
And let this flood endure yeres twaine :  
Than certes to my lady may I say, 11375  
Holdeth your hest, the rockes ben away.  
Lord Phebus, this miracle doth for me,  
Prey hire she go no faster cours than ye ;  
I say this, preyeth your suster that she go  
No faster cours than ye thise yeres two :  
Than shal she ben even at ful alway,  
And spring-flood lasten bothe night and day.  
And but she vouchesauf in swiche manere  
To graunten me my souveraine lady dere, 11384

Prey hire to sinken every rock adoun 11385  
 Into hire owen derke regioun  
 Under the ground, ther Pluto dwelleth in,  
 Or nevermo shal I my lady win.

Thy temple in Delphos wol I barefoot seke.  
 Lord Phebus, see the teres on my cheke,  
 And on my peine have som compassioun.  
 And with that word, in sorwé he fell adoun,  
 And longe time he lay forth in a trance. 11393  
 His brother, which that knew of his penance,  
 Up caught him, and to bed he hath him brought.  
 Dispeired in this turment and this thought  
 Let I this woful creature lie,  
 Chese he for me whether he wol live or die.

Arviragus with hele and gret honour  
 (As he that was of chevalrie the flour)  
 Is comen home, and other worthy men : 11401  
 O, blisful art thou now, thou Dorigen,  
 That hast thy lusty husbond in thin armes,  
 The freshe knight, the worthy man of armes,  
 That loveth thee, as his owen hertes lif :  
 Nothing list him to be imaginatif,  
 If any wight had spoke, while he was oute,  
 To hire of love; he had of that no doute ;  
 He not entendeth to no swiche matere,  
 But danceth, justeth, and maketh mery chere. 11410

And thus in joye and blisse I let hem dwell, 11411  
And of the sike Aurelius wol I tell.

In langour and in turment furious  
Two yere and more lay wrecche Aurelius,  
Er any foot on erthe he mighte gon ;  
Ne comfort in this time ne had he non,  
Sauf of his brother, which that was a clerk.  
He knew of all this wo and all this werk ;  
For to non other creature certain 11419  
Of this matere he dorste no word sain ;  
Under his brest he bare it more secree,  
Than ever did Pamphilus for Galathee.  
His brest was hole withouten for to seen,  
But in his herte ay was the arwe kene,  
And wel ye knowe that of a sursanure  
In surgerie is perilous the cure,  
But men might touch the arwe or come therby. 11427

His brother wepeth and waileth prively,  
Til at the last him fell in remembrance,  
That while he was at Orleauce in France,  
As yonge clerkes, that ben likerous  
To reden artes that ben curious,  
Seken in every halke and every herne  
Particuler sciences for to lerne,  
He him remembred, that upon a day  
At Orleauce in studie a book he say 11436

Of Magike naturel, which his felaw, 11437  
 That was that time a bachelor of law,  
 Al were he ther to lerne another craft,  
 Had prively upon his desk ylaft;  
 Which book spake moche of operations  
 Touching the eight and twenty mansions  
 That longen to the Mone, and swiche folie  
 As in our dayes n'is not worth a flie :  
 For holy cherches feith, in our beleve, 11445  
 Ne suffreth non illusion us to greve.  
 And whan this book was in his remembrance,  
 Anon for joye his herte gan to dance,  
 And to himself he saied prively ;  
 My brother shal be warished hastily :  
 For I am siker that ther be sciences,  
 By which men maken divers apparences,  
 Swiche as thise subtil tregetoures play. 11453  
 For oft at festes have I wel herd say,  
 That tregetoures, within an halle large,  
 Have made come in a water and a barge,  
 And in the halle rowen up and doun.  
 Somtime hath semed come a grim leoun,  
 And sometime floures spring as in a mede,  
 Somtime a vine, and grapes white and rede,  
 Somtime a castel al of lime and ston,  
 And whan hem liketh voideth it anon : 11462



Thus semeth it to every mannes sight. 11463

Now than conclude I thus, if that I might  
At Orleauce som olde felaw find,  
That hath thise Mones mansions in mind,  
Or other Magike naturel above,  
He shuld wel make my brother have his love.  
For with an apparence a clerk may make  
To mannes sight, that all the rockes blake  
Of Bretaigne were yvoided everich on, 11471  
And shippes by the brinke comen and gon,  
And in swiche forme endure a day or two :  
Than were my brother warished of his wo,  
Than must she nedes holden hire behest,  
Or elles he shal shame hire at the lest.

What shuld I make a lenger tale of this ?  
Unto his brothers bed he comen is,  
And swiche comfort he yaf him, for to gon 11479  
To Orleauce, that he up stert anon,  
And on his way forthward than is he fare,  
In hope for, to ben lissed of his care.

Whan they were come almost to that citee,  
But if it were a two furlong or three,  
A yonge clerk roming by himself they mette,  
Which that in Latine thriftily hem grette.  
And after that he sayd a wonder thing ;  
I know, quod he, the cause of your coming : 11488

And or they forther any foote went, 11489  
 He told hem all that was in hir entent.

This Breton clerk him axed of felawes,  
 The which he had yknowen in olde dawes,  
 And he answered him that they dede were;  
 For which he wept ful oftén many a tere.

Doun of his hors Aurelius light anon,  
 And forth with this magicien is gon.  
 Home to his hous, and made hem wel at ese : 11497  
 Hem lacked no vitaille that might hem plese.  
 So wel arraied hous as ther was on,  
 Aurelius in his lif saw never non.

He shewed him, or they went to soupe, re,  
 Forestes, parkes ful of wilde dere.  
 Ther saw he hartes with hir hornes hie,  
 The gretest that were ever seen with eie.  
 He saw of hem an hundred slain with houndes, 11505  
 And som with arwes blede of bitter woundes.  
 He saw, whan voided were the wilde dere,  
 These fauconers upon a faire rivere,  
 That with hir haukes han the heron slain.

Tho saw he knightes justen in a plain.  
 And after this he did him swiche plesance,  
 That he him shewed his lady on a dance,  
 On which himselven danced, as him thought. 11513  
 And whan this maister, that this magike wrought,

Saw it was time, he clapped his hondes two, 11515  
 And farewel, al the revel is agò.

And yet remued they never out of the hous;  
 While they saw all thise sightes merveillous;  
 But in his studie, ther his bookes be,  
 They saten still, and nò wight but they three.

To him this maister called his squier,  
 And sayd him thus, may we go to souper?  
 Almost an houre it is, I undertake, 11523  
 Sin I you bade our souper for to make,  
 Whan that thise worthy men wenten with me  
 Into my studie, ther my bookes be.

Sire, quod this squier, whan it liketh you,  
 It is al redy, though ye wol right now.

Go we than soupe, quod he, as for the best,  
 Thise amorous folk somtime moste han rest.

At after souper fell they in trettee 11531  
 What summe shuld this maisters guerdon be,  
 To remue all the rockes of Bretaigne,  
 And eke from Gerounde to the mouth of Saine.

He made it strange, and swore, so God him save,  
 Lesse than a thousand pound he wold not have,  
 Ne gladly for that summe he wold not gon.

Aurelius with blisful herte anon  
 Answered thus; fie on a thousand pound:  
 This wide world, which that men sayn is round, 11540

I wold it yeve; if I were lord of it. 11541

This bargaine is ful-drive, for we ben knit;

Ye shul be paied trewely by my trowth.

But loketh, for non negligence or slouth,

Ye tarie us here no lenger than to morwe.

Nay, quod this clerk, have here my faith to borwe.

To bed is gon Aurelius whan him lest,

And wel nigh all that night he had his rest,

What for his labour, and his hope of blisse, 11549

His woful herte of penance had a lisse.

Upon the morwe whan that it was day,

To Bretaigne token they the righte way,

Aurelie, and this magicien him beside,

And ben descended ther they wold abide :

And this was, as the bookes me remember,

The colde frosty seson of December,

Phebus waxe old, and hewed like laton, 11557

That in his hote declination

Shone as the burned gold, with stremes bright;

But now in Capricorne adoun he light,

Wher as he shone ful pale, I dare wel sain.

The bitter frostes with the sleet and rain

Destroyed han the grene in every yerd.

Janus sit by the fire with double berd,

And drinketh of his bugle horn the wine :

Beforn him stant braune of the tusked swine, 11566

And *nowel* crieth every lusty man.

11567

Aurelius in all that ever he can,  
Doth to his maister chere and reverence,  
And praieth him to don his diligence  
To bringen him out of his peines smerte,  
Or with a swerd that he wold slit his herte.

This sotil clerk swiche routh hath on this man,  
That night and day he spedeth him, that he can,  
To wait a time of his conclusion ; 11575  
This is to sayn, to make illusion,  
By swiche an apparence or joglerie,  
(I can no termes of Astrologie)  
That she and every wight shuld wene and say,  
That of Bretaigne the rockes were away,  
Or elles they were sonken under ground.  
So at the last he hath his time yfound  
To make his japes and his wretchednesse 11583  
Of swiche a superstitious cursednesse.  
His tables Toletanes forth he brought  
Ful wel corrected, that ther lacked nought,  
Nother his collect, ne his expans yeres,  
Nother his rotes, ne his other geres,  
As ben his centres, and his argumentes,  
And his proportionel convenientes  
For his equations' in every thing.  
And by his eighte speres in his werking, 11592

He knew ful wel how fer Alnath was shove 11593  
 Fro the hed of thilke fix Aries above,  
 That in the ninthe spere considered is.  
 Ful sotilly he calculed all this.

Whan he had found his firste mansion,  
 He knew the remenant by proportion ;  
 And knew the rising of his mone wel,  
 And in whos face, and terme, and every del ;  
 And knew ful wel the mones mansion 11601

Accordant to his operation ;  
 And knew also his other observances,  
 For swiche illusions and swiche meschances,  
 As hethen folk used in thilke daies.  
 For which no lenger maketh he delaies,  
 But thurgh his magike, for a day or tway,  
 It semed all the rockes were away.

Aurelius, which that despeired is, 11609  
 Whether he shal han his love, or fare amis,  
 Awaiteth night and day on this miracle :  
 And whan he knew that ther was non obstacle,  
 That voided were these rockes everich on,  
 Doun to his maisters feet he fell anon,  
 And sayd ; I woful wretch Aurelius,  
 Thanke you, my lord, and lady min Venus,  
 That me han holpen fro my cares cold.  
 And to the temple his way forth hath he hold, 11618

Theras he knew he shuld his lady see. 11619  
And whan he saw his time, anon right he  
With dredful herte and with ful humble chere  
Salued hath his souveraine lady dere.

My rightful lady, quod this woful man,  
Whom I most drede, and love, as I best can,  
And lothest were of all this world displese,  
N'ere it that I for you have swiche disese,  
That I must die here at your foot anon, 11627  
Nought wold I tell how me is wo-begon.  
But certes other must I die or plaine ;  
Ye sle me gilteles for veray peine.  
But of my deth though that ye han no routh,  
Aviseth you, or that ye breke your trouth :  
Repenteth you for thilke God above,  
Or ye me sle, because that I you love.  
For, madame, wel ye wote what ye have hight ; 11635  
Not that I challenge any thing of right  
Of you, my souveraine lady, but of grace ;  
But in a gardin yond, in swiche a place,  
Ye wote right wel what ye behighten me,  
And in myn hond your trouthe plighen ye,  
To love me best ; God wote ye saied so,  
Although that I unworthy be therto ;  
Madame, I speke it for the honour of you,  
More than to save my hertes lif right now : 11644

I have don so as ye commanded me, 11645  
 And if ye vouchesauf, ye may go see.  
 Doth as you list, have your behest in mind,  
 For quick or ded, right ther ye shul me find :  
 In you lith all to do me live or dey,  
 But wel I wote the rockes ben away.

He taketh his leve, and she astonied stood ;  
 In all hire face n'as o drope of blood :  
 She wened never han come in swiche a trappe. 11653

Alas ! quod she, that ever this shuld happe !  
 For wend I never by possibilitee,  
 That swiche a monstre or mervaille might be ;  
 It is again the processe of nature.  
 And home she goth a sorweful creature,  
 For veray fere unnethes may she go.  
 She wepeth, wailleth all a day or two,  
 And swounieth, that it routhe was to see : 11661  
 But why it was, to no wight tolde she,  
 For out of toun was gon Arviragus.  
 But to hireself she spake, and saied thus,  
 With face pale, and with ful sory chere,  
 In hire complaint, as ye shul after here.

Alas ! quod she, on thee, fortune, I plain,  
 That unware hast me wrapped in thy chain :  
 Fro which to escapen, wote I no soccour,  
 Sauf only deth ; or elles dishonour : 11670



On of these two behoveth me to chese. 11671  
 But natheles, yet had I lever lese  
 My lif, than of my body have a shame,  
 Or know myselven false, or lese my name ;  
 And with my deth I may be quit ywis.  
 Hath ther not many a noble wif or this,  
 And many a maid yslaine hireself, alas !  
 Rather than with hire body don trespas ?  
 Yes certes ; lo, these stories bere witnessse. 11679

Whan thirty tyrants ful of cursednesse  
 Had slain Phidon in Athens at the fest,  
 They commanded his doughtren for to arrest,  
 And bringen hem beforne hem in despit  
 Al naked, to fulfill hir foule delit ;  
 And in hir fadres blood they made hem dance  
 Upon the pavement, God yeve hem meschance.  
 For which these woful maidens ful of drede, 11687  
 Rather than they wold lese hir maidenhede,  
 They prively ben stert into a welle,  
 And dreint hemselven, as the bookes telle.

They of Messene let enquere and seke  
 Of Lacedomie fifty maidens eke,  
 On which they wolden don hir lecherie :  
 But ther was non of all that compaignie  
 That she n'as slaine, and with a glad entent  
 Chees rather for to dien, than assent 11696

To ben oppressed of hire maidenhede. 11697

Why shuld I than to dien ben in drede?

Lo eke the tyrant Aristoclides,  
That loved a maid hight Stimphalides,  
Whan that hire father slaine was on a night,  
Unto Dianes temple goth she' right,  
And hente the image in hire handes two,  
Fro which image wold she never go,  
No wight hire handes might of it arrace, 11705  
Til she was slaine right in the selve place.

Now sin that maidens hadden swiche despit  
To be defouled with mannes foule delit,  
Wel ought a wif rather hireselven sle,  
Than be defouled, as it thinketh me.

What shal I sayn of Hasdrubales wif,  
That at Cartage beraft hireself hire lif?  
For whan she saw that Romains wan the toun, 11713  
She toke hire children all, and skipt adoun  
Into the fire, and chees rather to die,  
Than any Romain did hire vilanie.

Hath not Lucrece yslaine hireself, alas!  
At Rome, whan that she oppressed was  
Of Tarquine? for hire thought it was a shame  
To liven, whan she hadde lost hire name.

The seven maidens of Milesie also  
Han slaine hemself for veray drede and wo, 11722

Rather than folk of Gaule hem shuld oppresse. 11723

Mo than a thousand stories, as I gesse,  
Coude I now tell as touching this matere.

Whan Abradate was slain, his wif so dere  
Hireselven slow, and let hire blood to glide  
In Abradates woundes, depe and wide,  
And sayd, my body at the leste way  
Ther shal no wight defoulen, if I may.

What shuld I mo ensamples hereof sain? 11731

Sin that so many han hemselven slain  
Wel rather than they wold defouled be,  
I wol conclude that it is bet for me  
To sle myself than be defouled thus.

I wol be trewe unto Arviragus,  
Or elles sle myself in some manere,  
As did Demotiones doughter dere,  
Because she wolde not defouled be.

11739

O Sedasus, it is ful gret pitee  
To reden how thy doughtren died, alas!  
That slowe hemselven for swiche maner cas.

As gret a pitee was it or wel more,  
The Theban maiden, that for Nichanore  
Hireselven slow, right for swiche manere wo.  
Another Theban mayden did right so,  
For qn of Macedoine had hire oppressed,  
She with hire deth hire maidenhed redressed.

11748

What shal I sain of Nicerates wif, 11749  
That for swiche cas beraft hireself hire lif?

How trewe was eke to Alcibiades  
His love, that for to dien rather chees,  
Than for to suffre his body unburied be?

Lo, which a wif was Alceste eke? (quod she)  
What sayth Homere of good Penelope?  
All Grece knoweth of hire chastitee.

Parde of Laodomia is written thus, 11757  
That whan at Troye was slain Prothesilaus,  
No lenger wolde she live after his day.

The same of noble Portia tell I may;  
Withouten Brutus coude she not live,  
To whom she had all hol hire herte yeve.

The parfit wifhood of Artemisie  
Honoured is thurghout all Barbarie.

O Teuta quene, thy wify chastitee 11765  
To alle wives may a mirroure be.

Thus plained Dorigene a day or twey,  
Purposing ever that she wolde dey;  
But natheles upon the thridde night  
Home came Arviragus, the worthy knight,  
And axed hire why that she weep so sore:  
And she gan wepen ever lenger the more.

Alas, quod she, that ever I was yborne! 11773  
Thus have I said, (quod she) thus have I sworne.

And told him all, as ye have herd before : 11775  
It nedeth not reherse it you no more.

This husbond with glad chere in frendly wise  
Answerd and sayd, as I shal you devise.  
Is ther ought elles, Dorigene, but this ?

Nay, nay, quod she, Gôd helpe me so, as wis  
This is to much, and it were Goddes will.

Ye, wif, quod he, let slepen that is still,  
It may be wel paraventure yet to-day. 11783

Ye shal your trouthe holden by my fay.  
For God so wisly have mercy on me,  
I had wel lever stiked for to be,  
For veray love which that I to you have,  
But if ye shuld your trouthe kepe and save.  
Trowth is the hiest thing that man may kepe.  
But with that word he brast anon to wepe,  
And sayd ; I you forbede on peine of deth, 11791  
That never while you lasteth lif or breth,  
To no wight tell ye this misaventure.

As I may best I wol my wo endure.  
Ne make no contenānce of hevinesse,  
That folk of you may demen harme or gesse.  
And forth he cleped a squier and a maid.  
Go forth anon with Dorigene, he said,  
And bringeth hire to swiche a place anon.  
They take hir leve, and on hir way they gon : 11800

But they ne wisten why she thider went, 11801  
 She n'olde no wight tellen hire entent.

This squier, which that highte Aurelius,  
 On Dorigene that was so amorous,  
 Of aventure happed hire to mete  
 Amid the toun, right in the quikkeste strete,  
 As she was boun to go the way forthright  
 Toward the gardin, ther as she had hight.  
 And he was to the gardinward also ; 11809  
 For wel he spied whan she wolde go  
 Out of hire hous, to auy maner place :  
 But thus they met of aventure or grace,  
 And he salueth hire with glad entent,  
 And axeth of hire whiderward she went.

And she answered, half as she were mad,  
 Unto the gardin, as myn husbond bad,  
 My trouthe for to hold, alas ! alas ! 11817

Aurelius gan wondren on this cas,  
 And in his herte had gret compassion  
 Of hire, and of hire lamentation,  
 And of Arviragus the worthy knight,  
 That bad hire holder all that she had hight,  
 So loth him was his wif shuld breke hire trouthe.  
 And in his herte he caught of it gret routhe,  
 Considering the best on every side,  
 That fro his lust yet were him lever abide, 11826

Than do so high a chérlish wretchednesse 11827  
 Ageins fraunchise, and alle gentillesse ;  
 For which in fewe wordes sayd he thus.

Madame, say to your lord Arviragus,  
 That sin I see the grete gentillesse  
 Of him, and eke I see wel your distresse,  
 That him were lever have shame (and that were routhe)  
 Than ye to me shuld breken thus your trouthe,

I hadde wel lever ever to suffren wo, 11835  
 Than to depart the love betwix you two.

I you relese, madame, into your hond  
 Quit every seurement and every bond,  
 That ye han made to me, as herebeforne,  
 Sin thilke time that ye were yborne.

Have here my trouthe, I shal you never repreve  
 Of no behest, and here I take my leve,  
 As of the trewest and the beste wif, 11843  
 That ever yet I knew in all my lif.

But every wif beware of hire behest ;  
 On Dorigene remembreth at the lest.  
 Thus can a squier doh a gentil dede,  
 As wel as can a knight, withouten drede.

She thanketh him upon hire knees bare,  
 And home unto hire husband is she fare,  
 And told him all, as ye han herd me sayd :  
 And, trusteth me, he was so wel apayd,  
 That it were impossible me to write. 11853

What shuld I lenger of this cas endite? 11854

Arviragus and Dorigene his wif  
 In soveraine blisse leden forth hir lif,  
 Never eft ne was ther anger hem betwene;  
 He cherished hire as though she were a quene,  
 And she was to him trewe for evermore;  
 Of these two folk ye get of me no more.

Aurelius, that his cost hath all forlorne,  
 Curseth the time, that ever he was borne. 11862

Alas! quod he, alas that I behight  
 Of pured gold a thousand pound of wight  
 Unto this philosophre! how shal I do?

I see no more, but that I am fordo.

Min heritage mote I nedes sell,

And ben a begger, here I n'll not dwell,

And shamèn all my kinrede in this place,

But I of him may geten better grace. 11870

But natheles I wol of him assay

At certain daies yere by yere to pay,

And thanke him of his grete curtesie.

My trouthe wol I kepe, I wol not lie.

With herte sore he goth unto his cofre,

And broughte gold unto this philosophre,

The value of five hundred pound I gesse,

And him besecheth of his gentillesse

To graunt him daies of the remenaunt,

And sayde; maister, I dare wel make avaunt, 11880



I failled never of my trouthe as yet. 11881

For sikerly my dette shal be quit

Towardes you, how so that ever I fare

To gon a begging in my kirtle bare :

But wold ye voucheñ sauf upon seurtee

Two yere or three for to respiten me,

Than were I wel, for elles mote I sell

Min heritage, ther is no more to tell.

This Philosophre sobrelly answerd,

11889

And saied thus, whan he thise wordes herd ;

Have I not holden covenant to thee ?

Yes certes, wel and trewely, quod he.

Hast thou not had thy lady as thee liketh ?

No, no, quod he, and sorwefully he siketh.

What was the cause ? tell me if thou can.

Aurelius his tale anon began,

And told him all as ye han herd before,

11897

It nedeth not reherse it any more.

He sayd, Arviragus of gentillesse

Had lever die in sorwe and in distresse,

Than that his wif were of hire trouthe fals.

The sorwe of Dorigene he told him als,

How loth hire was to ben a wicked wif,

And that she lever had lost that day hire lif ;

And that her trouth she swore thurgh innocence ;

She never erst hadde herd speke of apparence :

That made me han of hire so gret pitee,

11907

And right as freely as he sent hire to me, 11908  
 As freely sent I hire to him again :  
 This is all and som, ther n'is no more to sain.

The Philosopre answerd ; leve brother,  
 Everich of you did gentilly to other :  
 Thou art a squier, and he is a knight,  
 But God forbede for his blisful might,  
 But if a clerk coud don a gentil dede 11915  
 As wel as any of you, it is no drede.

Sire, I relese thee thy thousand pound,  
 As thou right now were crope out of the ground,  
 Ne never er now ne haddest knowen me.  
 For, sire, I wol not take a peny of thee  
 For all my craft, ne nought for my travaille :  
 Thou hast ypaied wel for my vitaille.  
 It is ynough, and farewel, have good day. 11923  
 And toke his hors, and forth he goth his way.

Lordings, this question wold I axen now,  
 Which was the moste free, as thinketh you ?  
 Now telleth me, or that ye further wende.  
 I can no more, my tale is at an ende. 11928

END OF VOL. II.



00052624



Digitized with financial assistance from the  
Government of Maharashtra  
on 25 June, 2016

